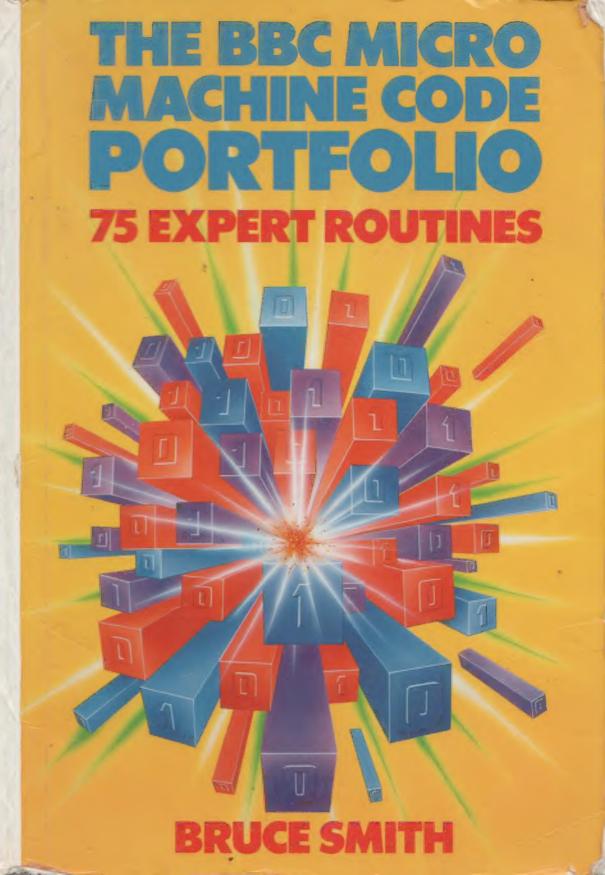
SMITH THE BBC MICRO MACHINE CODE PORTFOLIO





The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Bruce Smith

Other books for BBC Micro users

Introducing the BBC Micro Ian Sinclair 0.00 383072 1

The BBC Micro: An Expert Guide Mike James 0 246 12014 2

Discovering BBC Micro Machine Code

A. P. Stephenson 0 246 12160 2

Advanced Machine Code Techniques for the BBC Micro

A. P. Stephenson and D. J. Stephenson 0 246 12227 7

BBC Micro Graphics and Sound Steve Money

0 246 12156 4

Practical Programs for the BBC Micro Owen Bishop and Audrey Bishop

0 246 12405 9

21 Games for the BBC Micro

Mike James, S. M. Gee and Kay Ewbank

0 246 12103 3

Disk Systems for the BBC Micro

Ian Sinclair

0 246 12325 7

Learning is Fun -40 Educational Games for the BBC Micro

Vince Apps 0 246 12317 6

Advanced Programming for the BBC Micro

Mike James and S. M. Gee

0 00 383073 X

Take Off with the Electron and BBC Micro

Audrey Bishop and Owen Bishop

0 246 12356 7

Creative Animation and Graphics on the BBC Micro Mike James

0 00 383007 1

Handbook of Donald and A. P. C. of D. D. C.

Granada Technical Books Granada Publishing Ltd 8 Grafton Street, London WIX 3LA

First published in Great Britain by Granada Publishing 1984

Distributed in the United States of America by Sheridan House, Inc.

Copyright @ 1984 Bruce Smith

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Smith, Bruce
The BBC Micro machine code portfolio
1. Microcomputer—Programming
1. Title
001 64'24 OA76.8.B35

ISBN 0-246-12643-4

Typeset by V & M Graphics Ltd. Aylesbury, Bucks Printed and bound in Great Britain by Mackays of Chatham, Kent

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publishers.

Contents

Ack	nowledgements	vii
l	Introduction	1
2	Function Key Reader	10
3	Program Information	20
4	Program Formatters	32
5	The Screen	41
6	Softly, Softly	53
7	Global Variable Search and Replace	61
8	Time for Bed	72
9	Error, Pack and Autorun	78
10	The Necessary Evil	88
11	Vision On	108
12	Assembling Data and Lists	131
13	Communication	165
14	Odd One Out	183
Appendix: Some Portfolio Programs in Bar Code Form		
Ind	Index	



Acknowledgements

Many thanks to Acorn User for allowing me to reproduce a couple of my programs included in issues of the magazine, namely the function key lister and the soft VDU character definition printer.

Thanks also to Harry Sinclair for providing two of the seventy-five programs herein from his own library of procedures. His

contributions were Programs 11.16 and 13.9.

Finally, to Richard Miles of Granada, a thank you for seeding the idea for the Portfolio in the first place.

Bruce Smith

Disks and cassettes of the programs in this book are available. Apply for details to:

> Dept AB Collins Professional and Technical Books 8 Grafton Street London WIX 3LA

Chapter One Introduction

The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio is aimed at providing the serious machine code programmer with an interesting and useful set of assembly language routines. In all, a selection of 75 programs from my own disk-based library are included, ranging from general purpose utility aids to BASIC and machine code programming to specific utilities that could form the basis of an interesting machine code compiler. Each of the assembler routines is provided as a uniquely line numbered procedure that can be *EXECuted back into a program any time it is required. Although the programs are written making full use of BASIC II's EQU functions, a solution is provided towards the end of this chapter that will enable BASIC I users to implement these functions with the absolute minimum of fuss.

The Portfolio is not aimed at the beginner. Many of the routines assume a rudimentary knowledge of the manipulative techniques involved. For this reason, the descriptive commentary of, say, a multibyte addition program may be kept to the looping and data manipulation means used rather than the principles of the actual addition itself. This does not mean to say that the Portfolio is presented with experts in mind – far from it. My own knowledge of machine code programming was facilitated by continuous trial and error programming, and at that time no books of this sort were available to help me along the way. Enter the program and use it as described in the text; in using the program and experimenting with it the real knowledge will be gained.

The contents of each chapter have been grouped together for ease of use. Chapters 2 to 9 provide the programming utilities which can make the programmer's life a merry one. These include function key definition printers, program variable dumps, a global search and replace utility and a program compacter.

Chapter 10 provides the mathematically biased routines. Four multibyte routines handle addition, subtraction, multiplication and

2

division. The remaining seven routines provide square root solutions and dual byte shifts.

Graphics are dealt with in Chapter II, with just about every BASIC-type graphics command covered. This includes a useful routine using the interpreter-based *640 multiplication table to convert an X,Y screen coordinate into an absolute screen address. The graphics routines are particularly easy to group into a BASIC-driven menu to provide a simple graphics compiler (SGC).

All programs require data manipulation at some time and Chapter 12 supplies eleven procedures to sort, add, and delete items from a variety of lists and arrays. Screen interaction is important in making programs user-friendly, and Chapter 13 provides the routines to enable this to be performed with ease. Finally, Chapter 14 has grouped a few miscellaneous procedures together providing timing delays, counters and interrupt polling.

The Appendix contains a number of the Portfolio programs in a new form—as bar code listings. Using the MEP bar code reader these may be read in directly from the pages of the book itself!

The correct procedure

As mentioned, each of the assembler routines are implemented as PROCedures, with each having its own range of line numbers. The procedure contains all the necessary coding to make the routine a stand-alone one. Because a procedure must be called from a program, each program contains several lines of BASIC to call first the PROC to assemble the machine code it contains and then demonstrate the type of application possible. This serves two functions; first, it assures you that you have entered the program correctly and also shows you how it works! If you flick through a few of the programs you'll notice that the lines of the PROC are given high line numbers in steps of 1 while the assemble and test routines use low line numbers. This is quite deliberate as it keeps the two parts of the program clearly separated.

To build up a library of these programs to disk or tape, the PROCedure can be save to tape. As the low line numbers are only, in effect, test routines these can be deleted so that only the procedure remains; and it is this that should be saved. I prefer to save my PROCedures as ASCII files rather than programs as this allows them to be added easily to other programs. The *SPOOL command is used to perform this. Choosing a suitable filename, the syntax is simply:

*SPOOL NAME

If you are using the cassette filing system then you'll need to start the cassette running. If you are using disks then these will already be whirling around. So, now simply LIST the program. As the listing appears onto the screen it will also be written to the current filing system. When the program has finished listing enter

*SPOOL

once again to complete the transfer from memory to filing medium. You will probably have noticed that the filename used in the *SPOOL command was not enclosed within the quotes normally associated with a SAVE. This is acceptable as the MOS does not expect them - though using them will have no adverse effect.

Once all programs have been treated in this way they are ready to be used in a greater scheme of things! One point - when building up a large library of procedures it is very important to catalogue them, in a book, on another disk or tape, or on the front of each tape or disk. This catalogue should depict the program's name, line numbers and function as this will be invaluable when it comes to using them at a later date.

Once a program has been saved as a spooled file it can be loaded back into memory using the MOS-based *EXEC command. To load the previously spooled file you use

*EXEC NAME

Again, the quotes around the filename are not obligatory. When the operating system encounters the file it treats each line of it as though it had been typed in at the keyboard and as the return character at the end of the line is reached the line is entered into memory. This is the main reason for using unique line numbers within procedures, as it enables several procedures to be *EXECuted into memory without fear of overwriting any program lines already there.

A demonstration

To show the flexibility of the programs within the Portfolio and their use, study the following demonstration. Suppose a short graphics routine is required that will select a MODE 4 screen and draw dotted line from the coordinate 200,200 to 900,600. First, the three desired files to perform a MODE, MOVE and PLOT must be loaded

in (these can be found in Chapter 13). Depending on the filenames you have chosen, this might take the form of executing the following commands one by one:

- *EXEC mode
- *EXEC move
- *EXEC plot

The resultant listing forms part of Program 1.1. Next, a BASIC primer needs to be written to call each PROC and pass the relevant information through the arguments of the procedural call. First, PROCmode:

20 PROCmode (4, &A00)

The PROCedure is called passing the mode number, 4 into the variable 'action' and the assembly address, &A00, into 'addr'. Next, the graphics cursor must be moved. The problem here is that we do not really want to have to calculate the new value to be assigned to 'addr' for the code assembly; instead we can simply use the program counter itself in the form of P%. Thus line 30 becomes

30 PROCmove (200, 200, P%)

The move coordinates are 200,200 and the PROCmove code is assembled from P%. Finally PROCplot can be treated in the same way to give

40 PROCplot (21,900,600,P%)

where 21 is the plot code for an absolute dotted line, 900,600 the final coordinates and P% the assembly address.

Now each PROCedure will assemble its code as a subroutine call. To implement the machine code, a short procedure must be written that will call each subroutine in turn, thus:

JSR mode \ set up MODE

JSR move \ move graphics cursor JMP plot \ draw line and return

Program 1.1 lists the final program and, by way of proof of the output, Figure 1.1 lists the assembler listing produced when RUN.

When using this modular-cum-structured assembly approach, the use of the OPT command must be borne in mind. If the OPT command is omitted then the default value of 3 will be assumed by the assembler. In the case of the above example this was not too much of a problem, but there are occasions when it will be! For example, if

```
10 REM *** USING THE PORTFOLIO ***
  20 PROCmode (4,&A00)
  30 PROCmove (200,200,P%)
  40 PROCplat (21,900,600,P%)
  50 PROCassemble (P%)
  60 CALL test
  70 END
  80 :
 100 DEE PROCassemble (adde)
 110 P%=addr
 120 [
 130 .test
                 JSR mode
 140
 150
                 JSR move
 160
                 JMP plot
 170 I
 180 ENDPROC
 200 :
6000 DEF PROCmode (action.addr)
6001 P%=addr
6002 E
6003 .mode
6004
                 LDA #22
6005
                 JSR &FFEE
6006
                 LDA #action
6007
                 JSR &FFEE
8009
                 RTS
6009 1
6010 ENDPROC
6180 DEF PROCmove(xpos, ypos, addr)
6181 P%=addr
6182 F
6183 .maye
6184
                LDA #25
6185
                JSR &FFEF
6186
                LDA #4
6187
                JSR &FFEE
               LDA #xpos MOD 256
6188
6189
                JSR &FFEE
               LDA #xpos DIV 256
6190
6191
               JSR &FFEE
6192
               LDA #ypos MOD 256
6173
               JSR &FFEE
6194
               LDA #ypos DIV 256
6195
               JSR &FFEE
6196
               RTS
6197 ]
6198 ENDPROC
```

Program 1.1. Spooling procedures to form a graphics program.

```
6220 DEF PROCplot(code, xcord, ycord, addr)
6221 P%=addr
6222 I
6223 .plot
6224
               LDA #25
6225
               JSR &FFEE
6226
               LDA #code
6227
               JSR &FFEE
6228
               LDA #xcord MOD 256
6229
               JSR &FFEE
6230
               LDA #xcord DIV 256
6231
               JSR &FFEE
6232
               LDA #ycord MOD 256
6233
               JSR &FFEE
6234
               LDA #ycord DIV 256
6235
               JSR &FFEE
6236
               RTS
6237 ]
6238 ENDPROC
```

Program 1.1. Spooling procedures to form a graphics program (cont.).

```
>RUN
0A00
0A00
             .mode
0A00 A9 16 LDA #22
QA02 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
OAO5 A9 04 LDA #action
0A07 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A0A 60
             RTS
CAOR
OACB
             . MCVE
0A0B A9 19 LDA #25
OAOD 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A10 A9 04 LDA #4
OA12 ZO EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A15 A9 C8 LDA #xpos MOD 256
0A17 20 EE FF JSR %FFEE
0A1A A9 00
            LDA #xpos DIV 256
OAIC 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
            LDA #ypos MOD 256
OAIF A9 C8
OA21 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A24 A9 00 LDA #ypos DIV 256
0A26 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
QA29 60
             RTS
OA2A
0A2A
             .plot
0A2A A9 19
           LDA #25
OAZC 20 EE FF JSR %FFEE
0A2F A9 15
            LDA #code
```

Fig. 1.1. Assembler listing produced by Program 1.1.

```
0A31 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
OA34 A9 84 LDA #xcord MOD 256
0A36 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A39 A9 03 LDA #xcord DIV 256
0A3B 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
DASE A9 58 LDA #ycord MOD 254
0A40 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A43 A9 02 LDA #ycord DIV 256
0A45 20 EE FF JSR &FFEE
0A48 60
             RTS
0449
0049
              .test
0A49 20 00 0A JSR mode
OA4C 20 OB OA JSR move
OA4F 4C 2A OA JMP plot
```

Fig. 1.1. Assembler listing produced by Program 1.1 (cont.).

assembly is performed on a conditional basis then it may be desirable to suppress it altogether using OPT 2 lest it corrupt some vital screen detail. Alternatively, a FOR...NEXT combination may be imperative to suppress errors during a first pass to assign forward branch labels. There is no simple way around this. A universal solution would be to include a

FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2

line in all procedures. I prefer to add the OPT commands as required, but the choice is yours.

The BASIC solution

BASIC II provides several enhancements over its predecessor BASIC I. The most useful of these are the EQU functions which are implemented as pseudo-opcodes. These functions and their operations are:

EOUB : assemble specified byte

EQUW: assemble specified word (2 bytes)

EOUD: assemble specified double word (4 bytes)

EQUS: assemble specified string as ASCII characters

Numerous programs in the Portfolio take advantage of these commands, which would therefore make them inoperable on Beebs with BASIC I. These commands can be simulated quite simply using the ability of the FN command.

Program 1.2 lists the function definitions plus a suitable demonstration. Taking each definition as it appears in the program, FNequs (lines 500 to 530) uses the program counter variable P% as the string argument for the ASCII character string passed into the function via 'strings'. Before exit, P% is incremented by the length of the string.

FNequb (lines 550 to 580) takes the value 'byte%' and simply pokes it into memory at P%. The program counter is incremented by one and completes. FNequw (lines 600 to 640) is an extension and provides two pokes at the position of P%. The high and low bytes are

```
10 REM ## SIMULATING BASIC II EQU ##
 20 P%=8900
 30 E
 40
              LDA #255
 50
              OPT FNegus ("TEST", 3)
 60
              LDX #0
 70
              OPT FNeoub (6.3)
 BO
              LDY #833
 90
              OPT FNequw(%FFFF.3)
100
              STX &70
              OPT FNegud (%12345678,3)
110
120
              LDX #&AA
130
              RTS
140 3
150 END
160 :
500 DEF FNegus(string$.opt)
510 $P%=string$
520 P%=P%+LEN(string$)
530 =opt
540 :
550 DEF FNegub (byte%, opt)
560 ?P%=byte%
570 P%=P%+1
590 =opt
590 :
600 DEF FNeguw(word%.cct)
610 ?P%=word% MOD 256
620 P%?1=word% DIV 256
630 P%=P%+2
640 =opt
650 :
660 DEF FNegud (double%.opt)
670 !P%=double%
680 P%=P%+4
690 =opt
```

Program 1.2. Simulating the BASIC II EQU functions in BASIC I.

extracted from 'word' using the MOD and DIV operators. Finally, FNequal (lines 660 to 690) uses the word indirection operator to pling its four bytes into memory.

The assembler text (lines 40 to 130) shows how each procedure should be called. The second parameter in each of the OPT FN calls (3 throughout) simply refers to the OPT selection and this should be seeded as required by the program. To end with, Figure 1.2 shows the assembler listing provided when running this program, while the hex dump in Figure 1.3 shows that each FN has indeed performed the required task.

```
>RUN
0900
0900 A9 FF
               LDA #255
0906
               OPT FNequs ("TEST", 3)
0906 A2 00
               LDX #0
0909
               OPT FNegub (6.3)
0909 A0 33
               LDY #&33
090D
               OPT FNequw (&FFFF, 3)
090D 86 70
               STX &70
0913
               OPT FNegud (&12345678,3)
0913 A2 AA
               AA3# XCJ
0915 60
               RTS
```

Fig. 1.2. Assembler listing produced by Program 1.2.

```
900
    A9
901
     FF
902
     54
903
     45
904
     53
905
     54
906 AZ
907
    - 0
908 6
909 A0
90A
     33
908 FF
900
     FF
900
    86
90E
     70
90F
     78
910
     56
911
     34
912
    12
913
    A2
914
     AA
915
     60
```

Fig. 1.3. A hex dump of the code assembled by Program 1.2, showing that the functions have worked.

Chapter Two

Function Key Reader

Virtually all the toolbox type of commercial ROM packages around these days include a facility for printing any resident function key definitions. Many, though, are incomplete and only deal with keys 0 through to 10, neglecting keys 11 to 15. Writing a custom-built routine to handle printing definitions present in all sixteen function keys is a relatively easy task providing a working knowledge of the function key buffer is to hand. Two programs are presented here; the first is reprinted from the April 1984 edition of Acorn User while the second is an improved version. The two differ in that the former,

Key	Pointer byte		
0	&B00		
1	&B01		
2	& B02		
3	& B03		
4	& B04		
5	& B05		
6	& B06		
7	&B07		
8	&B08		
9	&B09		
10	&B0A		
11	&B0B		
12	&B0C		
13	&B0D		
14	&B0E		
15	&B0F		
TOP	&B10		

Fig. 2.1. Function key associated bytes.

Program 2.1, is not capable of printing multistatement single key definitions whereas the latter, Program 2.2, is. The advantage in using the former is the saving in memory overheads as it requires only half the memory space required by the latter.

The function key buffer is located in page &B of block zero RAM occupying the bytes &B00 to &BFF inclusive. With the exception of the first seventeen bytes, all of this is used to hold the key definitions in ASCII format: commands are not tokenised. These first seventeen bytes, &B00 to &B10, are the key pointer bytes and Figure 2.1 details the bytes associated with the individual keys. Monitoring each of these bytes as key definitions are entered, modified and deleted gives an insight into their purpose. Figure 2.2 is a hex dump of the start of the buffer after a hard break, either when you have switched on or the CTRL-BREAK sequence is carried out. At this stage the buffer contains nothing but &10 in every byte.

```
OBOO : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OBOS : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB10 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB18 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB20 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB28 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB30 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB38 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
```

Fig. 2.2. Key buffer after switch-on.

Figure 2.3 depicts the same area of the key buffer after a short definition has been entered into f0 thus:

```
*KEY 0 CLS | M
```

The dump shows that the ASCII string CLS is present but that the return sequence "M' has been replaced with the more conventional ASCII return character &0D. It is also obvious from the dump that the key pointer bytes have altered. The first byte at & B00 is, we know from Figure 2.1, associated with *KEY0, and this byte still contains

```
OBOO : 10 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 .....
OBO8 | 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 ......
OBIO: 14 43 4C 53 OD 10 10 10 .CLS....
OB18 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB20 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB28 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB30 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
OB38 : 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 ......
```

Fig. 2.3. Key buffer after executing *KEYO CLS M.

&10 or 16 decimal. Counting sixteen bytes from this location we arrive at the first character in the *KEY 0 definition. The remaining key pointer bytes now all contain &14 or 20 decimal; counting 20 bytes from the *KEY 0 pointer brings us to the last byte of the *KEY 0 definition, the carriage return character at &B14.

Figure 2.4 shows the buffer after a further key has been defined, thus:

*KEY 9 AUTO ! M

The ASCII characters of the new definition are entered into the buffer immediately after the last definition. The key pointer byte for *KEY 9 at &B09 still contains &14 while the *KEY0 byte remains at &10. All the other key pointer bytes have been updated to hold &19 or 25 decimal. Starting from &B00 and counting 25 bytes brings us to &B19, the last byte defined in the buffer.

Fig. 2.4. Key buffer after executing *KEY9 AUTO [M.

It is worth looking at what happens in the buffer if a function key is redefined. Figure 2.5 shows the effect of placing a longer defintion into *KEY 0 than was already present, thus:

```
*KEY 0 VDU 7 | M
```

What has happened now is that the previous *KEY0 definition has been deleted, the remaining definition(s) shuffled up to the front of the buffer and the new *KEY0 definition added onto the end. Each of the key pointer bytes have been adjusted to point to the correct

Fig. 2.5. Key buffer after redefining fO as *KEYO VDU 7 M.

location. *KEY 9 was defined as AUTO and the pointer byte at &B09 now holds &10 giving the offset from &B00 to the start of the definition. *KEY 0 which is now tacked onto the end of the *KEY 9 definition has had its pointer offset reset to &15 or 21 decimal. The remaining pointer bytes have also been adjusted to all give the correct offset to the last used byte in the buffer. &1B or 27 decimal, which when added to &B00 gives &B1B.

The key pointer area contains an extra 'general' byte at &B10 that we have not yet mentioned. This byte is, in fact, the TOP pointer in the buffer and always holds the byte offset into the buffer of the last used location. The MOS uses this byte to test if a *KEY definition is present when a function key has been defined. If the key pointer byte and the TOP pointer byte are the same, the MOS inserts the definition directly after the last definition (as pointed to by the pointer and TOP bytes). If, on the other hand, the pointer byte and TOP byte are different, the MOS knows that m definition is already present for the function key just defined and that it must do some reshuffling of the bytes in the buffer.

Program 2.1

Program 2.1 is the first of the function key definition printer programs. Called PROCkeys1, it occupies 63 lines between 1000 and 1063. All processor registers are used and the object code occupies 126 bytes anywhere in memory as specified by the variable 'addr'.

```
10 REM *** FUNCTION KEY PRINTER ***
  20 REM *(C) Bruce Smith & Acorn User*
  30 oswnch=&FFEE
  40 osasci=%FFF3
  50 PROCkeys! (&COO)
  60 *KEYO CALL &COO!M
  70 END
  80 :
1000 DEF PROCkeys1 (addr)
1001 LOCAL key, pointer
1002 key=&B00
1003 pointer=%B10
1004 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
1005 P%=addr
1006 [OPT pass
1007
                   LDX #0
1008 .main_loop
```

Program 2.1. PROCkeys1 - a simple function key lister.

14 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

```
1009
                     TXA
1010
                     ASL A
1011
                     TAX
1012
                     JSR print_word_key
1013
                     LDA number_table, X
1014
                     JSR oswrch
1015
                     LDA number_table+1,X
1016
                     JSR oswrch
1017
                     TXA
1018
                     LSR A
1019
                     TAX
1020
                     LDA #&20
1021
                     JSR pswrch
1022
                     LDA key, X
1023
                     CMP painter
1024
                     BNE over
1025
                     JMP update
1026 .over
1027
                     TAY
1028
                     INY
1029 .next_character
1030
                     LDA key, Y
1031
                     CMP #13
1032
                     BEQ carriage_return
1033
                     JSR oswech
1034
                     INY
1035
                     BNE next_character
1036 .carraige_return
1037
                     LDA #ASC":"
1038
                     JSR oswech
1039
                     LDA #ASC"M"
1040
                     JSR oswrch
1041 .update
1042
                    LDA#13
1043
                     JSR osasci
1044
                     INX
1045
                     CPX#16
1046
                     BNEmain loop
1047
                    RTS
1048 .print_word_key
1049
                    LDY#6
1050 .next_letter
1051
                    LDA spell_key.Y
1052
                    JSR oswrch
1053
                     DEY
1054
                    BNE next_letter
1055
                    RTS
```

Program 2.1. PROCkeys 1 - ■ simple function key lister (cont.).

```
1056 .number_table
                     EQUS" 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
 1057
7 8
                     EQUS"8 9101112131415
1058
 1059 .spell_key
                     EQUS " YEK* "
 1060
 1061 3
 1062 NEXT
 1063 ENDPROC
```

Program 2.1. PROCkeys 1 - a simple function key lister (cont.).

Converting the hard facts of Function Key Buffer operation into some suitable machine code is relatively easy and the main areas of coding are straightforward. From this we can see the main routines of the code which, in everyday terms, are a follows:

- (a) Print the string "KEY" followed by the current key number (therefore we need we key counter!).
- (b) Obtain the key pointer and if the same as the TOP pointer move onto the next function key.
- (c) Else increment key pointer and print the definition string until the RETURN character is found.
- (d) Print M and do a RETURN.
- (e) Increment the function key counter.
- (f) Repeat the whole process until all sixteen keys have been printed.

The X register is used to keep a count of the current key being investigated so initially this is set to zero (line 1007). The register is also used as an index into the key number look-up table (lines 1056 to 1058) where each of the ASCII codes for the key number occupies two bytes. To ensure that the correct offset is located, the key count must be multiplied by two using an arithmetic shift left (lines 1009 to 1011). The word "*KEY" and the current key number are printed using the subroutine calls of lines 1012 to 1016.

A definition present test is performed in line 1022 and 1023 and a branch over executed (line 1024) if one is found. A simple index, extract and print routine is used to print the definition string (lines 1036 to 1040) before the key count in the index register is updated flines 1041 to 1047).

Program 2.2

Program 2.2 is, in essence, the same as Program 2.1 but extra coding

has been incorporated into the listing to test for multiple definitions and control codes. The procedure is called PROCkeys2 and assumes line numbers 1070 to 1189 inclusive. The source code generates 246 bytes of hex assembled at 'addr'.

```
10 REM *FUNCTION KEY DEFINITIONS V2*
  20 PROCkeys2 (%A00)
  30 *KEYO CALL &AOO!M
  40 END
  50 :
1070 DEF PROCkeys2 (addr)
1071 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
1072 P%=addr
1073 €
1074
                OPT pass
1075 .entry
1076
                LDA #0
1077
                STA key
1078
                STA offset
1079 .mainloop
1080
                JSR &FFE7
1081
                JSR printwordkey
1082
                LDX key
1083
                LDA numbertable, X
1084
                INX
1085
                JSR &FFEE
1086
                LDA numbertable.X
1097
                JSR &FFEE
1088
                INX
1089
                STX key
                LDA #32
1090
1091
                JSR &FFEE
1092
                LDX offset
1093
                LDA &BOO, X
1094
                STA keystart
                INC keystart
1095
1096
                LDA &B10
1097
                STA endpointer
1098
                LDX #&F
1099 . keyend
1100
                LDA &BOO.X
1101
                CMP endpointer
1102
                BCS nexttry
1103
                CMP keystart
1104
                BCC nexttry
1105
                STA endpointer
1106 .nexttry
1107
                DEX
```

Program 2.2. PROCkeys2 - the complete function key lister.

```
1108
                BPL kevend
                LDA endpointer
1109
1110
                CMP keystart
                BCC nextkey
1111
                LDX keystart
1112
1113 .printdef
                LDA &BOO.X
1114
1115
                CMP #128
                BCC asciichr
1116
                PHA
1117
                LDA #ASC":"
1118
1119
                JSR &FFEE
                LDA #ASC"!"
1120
                JSR &FFEE
1121
                PLA
1122
                AND #$7F
1123
1124 .asciichr
                CMP #32
1125
1126
                BCS notcontrol
                PHA
1127
                LDA #ASC"!"
1128
                JSR &FFEE
1129
                PLA
1130
                CLC
1131
                ADC #64
1132
                JSR %FFEE
1133
                JMP nextcharacter
1134
1135 .notcontrol
                CMP #127
1136
1137
                BNE over
                LDA #ASC"!"
1138
1139
                JSR &FFEE
                LDA #ASC"?"
1140
                JSR &FFEE
1141
                JMP nextcharacter
1142
1143 .over
                 CMP#124
1144
                BNE not
1145
                LDA #ASC"!"
1146
                 JSR &FFEE
1147
                JSR &FFEE
1148
1149
                 JMP nextcharacter
1150 .not
                 JSR &FFEE
1151
1152 .nextcharacter
                 CPX endpointer
1153
                 BEG nextkey
1154
```

Program 2.2. PROCkeys2 - the complete function key lister (cont.).

INX

1155

```
1156
                JMP orintdef
1157 .nextkev
1158
                INC offset
                LDA offset
1159
                CMP #16
1160
                BNE notfinished
1161
1162
                JSR &FFE7
1163
                RTS
1164 .notfinished
1165
                JMP mainloop
1166 .printwordkey
1167
               LDY #6
1168 .nextletter
                LDA spellkey. Y
1169
                JSR &FFEE
1170
                DEY
1171
                BNE nextletter
1172
1173
                RTS
1174 .numbertable
1175
                EQUS" 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 "
                EQUS"8 9101112131415"
1176
1177 .spellkev
                       YEK# "
1178
                EGUS"
1179 .kev
                EQUB 0
1180
1181 .keystart
1182
                EQUB 0
1183 .endpointer
                EQUB 0
1194
1185 .offset
1186
                EQUB O
1187 ]
1188 NEXT
1189 ENDPROC
```

Program 2.2. PROCkeys2 - the complete function key lister (cont.).

The definition printing routine (line 1113) begins by testing the definition for a character code greater than 128 (entered previously with the '!!' sequence). If one is present this sequence is printed; either way, control progresses to line 1124 where a control character (less than &32) is tested for. If a control character is found, the 't' character is printed followed by the ASCII code of the control character representation, obtained by adding &40 to it. Thus CNTR-L is printed as 'L'.

The end_pointer bytes are used to keep track of the length of the entered key definition as previously calculated by the key_end coding (lines 1099 to 1112), and the print_def loop continues until the entire function key definition is printed. The main_loop is executed sixteen times to print all the function key definitions. The final output of this program is shown in Figure 2.6.

```
*KEY O CALL &AOO!M
*KEY
     1 CLS!M
*KEY 2 *GREPL!M
#KEY 3 LIST:M
*KEY 4 *ASSFORM:M
#KEY 5 #INSPECT
#KEY 6 #BASFORM!M
*KEY 7 FORN=&70 TO &7F:P.?N:N. IM
$KEY 8 $EXMONIM
*KEY 9 *BASIC!M
*KEY 10 OLD:MLIST:M
*KEY 11
*KEY 12
*KEY 13
*KEY 14
#KEY 15
```

Fig. 2.6. Typical output of Program 2.2.

Program fact sheets

Function key printers

Program 2.1

Proc title : PROCkeys1 Line numbers : 1000 to 1063

Variables required : addr Length : 126 bytes Zero page requirements : none Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 2.2

Procedure title : PROCkeys2 Line numbers : 1070 to 1189

Variables required : addr Length : 246 bytes Zero page requirements: none Registers changed : A. X. Y

Chapter Three

Program Information

Two programming utilities are provided in this chapter. Program 3.1 lists the status of the various BASIC pseudo-variables in addition to displaying the length of the program currently under development and the number of bytes remaining available for use. To complement this, Program 3.2 when called will list every variable currently defined within a BASIC program (except the resident integer variables A% to $\mathbb{Z}\%$), and this includes assembler labels. This is particularly useful in long programs when it is difficult to keep a mental track of the variable names you have already chosen and thus avoids the infuriating situation that can occur when you use the same variable name twice and wonder why the program will just not work as it should!

Program status

PROCinfo is the assembler procedure to generate the source code for the info program. I have given the name 'info' to the procedure simply because it is more representative to the program's function. I would

```
10 REM *** PROGRAM INFORMATION ***
20 himem=HIMEM
30 himem=himem-&200
40 HIMEM=himem
50 PROCinfo (&70,HIMEM)
60 *KEYO CALL HIMEM:M
70 END
80 :
1200 DEF PROCinfo (current,addr)
1201 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
1202 P%=addr
1203 (
```

Program 3.1. PROCinfo - provides details on system pseudo-variables.

```
1204
                OPT pass
                LDX #title MOD 256
1205
1206
                LDY #title DIV 256
                JSR print message
1207
1208 .do page
1209
                LDX #message1 MOD 256
1210
                LDY #message1 DIV 256
                JSR print message
1211
                LDA $18
1212
1213
                JSR hex out
                LDA #0
1214
                JSR hex out
1215
                JSR &FFE7
1216
1217 .do top
1218
                LDX #message4 MOD 256
1219
                LDY #message4 DIV 256
1220
                JSR print message
                LDA &13
1221
1222
                JSR hex out
1223
                LDA &12
                JSR hex out
1224
1225
                JSR &FFE7
1226 .do himem
1227
                JSR &FFE7
1228
                LDX #message2 MOD 256
1229
                LDY #message2 DIV 256
                JSR print_message
1230
1231
                LDA &7
1232
                JSR hex_out
1233
                LDA &6
1234
                JSR hex out
1235
                JSR &FFE7
1236 .do lomem
1237
                LDX #message3 MOD 256
1238
                LDY #message3 DIV 256
1239
                JSR print_message
1240
                LDA &1
                JSR hex_out
1241
1242
               LDA &O
1243
                JSR hex out
1244
                JSR &FFE7
1245
               JSR %FFE7
1246 .do_size
1247
                LDX #message5 MOD 256
1248
                LDY #message5 DIV 256
1249
                JSR print message
1250
                SEC
1251
                LDA &13
```

Program 3.1. PROCinfo - provides details on system pseudo-variables (cont.).

```
1252
                 SBC &18
 1253
                 JSR hex_out
1254
                LDA &12
1255
                JSR hex_cut
1256
                LDX #bytes MOD 256
1257
                LDY #bytes DIV 256
1258
                JSR print_message
1259 .do_next_free
1260
                LDX #message6 MOD 256
1261
                LDY #message6 DIV 256
1262
                JSR print_message
1263
                LDA &3
1264
                JSR hex out
1265
                LDA &2
1266
                JSR hex out
1267
                JSR &FFE7
1268
                JSR &FFF7
1269 .memory_left
1270
                LDX #message7 MOD 256
                LDY #message7 DIV 256
1271
1272
                JSR print message
1273
                SEC
1274
                LDA &6
1275
                SBC &2
                STA store
1276
1277
                LDA &7
1278
                SBC &3
1279
                JSR hex_out
1280
                LDA store
1281
                JSR hex_out
1282
                LDX #bytes MOD 256
1283
                LDY #bytes DIV 256
1284
                JSR print_message
12B5
                RTS
1286 .print_message
1287
                STX current
1288
                STY current+1
1289
                LDY #0
1290 .loop
1291
                LDA (current).Y
1292
                BMI all done
1293
                JSR &FFE3
1294
                INY
1295
                BNE 1cop
1296 .all done
1297
                RTS
1298 .hex_out
1299
                PHA
```

Program 3.1. PROCinfo - provides details on system pseudo-variables (cont.).

```
LSR A
1300
               LSR A
1301
               LSR A
1302
1303
               LSR A
               SED
1304
               CLC
1305
               ADC #&90
1306
                ADC #840
1307
1308
               CLD
                JSR &FFEE
1309
1310
               PLA
               AND #15
1311
1312
                SED
1313
               CLC
                ADC #&90
1314
                ADC #8.40
1315
                CLD
1316
                JMP &FFEE
1317
1318 .title EQUB 12
                EQUS"
                        Program"
1319
                EQUS" Information Service"
1320
1321
                EDUD &ODODODOD
1322
                EQUB 255
1323 .message1
1324
                EQUS"PAGE :
                              82 H
1325
                EQUB 255
1326 .message2
1327
                EQUS"HIMEM : &"
1328
                EQUB 255
1329 .message3
1330
                EQUS"LOMEM :
1331
                EQU9 255
1332 .message4
1333
                EQUS"TOP
                          ± 8c11
1334
                EQUB 255
1335 .message5
1336
                EQUS"Program Size=%"
1337
                EQUB 255
1338 .message6
1339
                EQUS"Next Free Location=&"
1340
                EQUB 255
1341 .message7
1342
                EQUS"Memory Remaining=&"
1343
                EQUB 255
1344 .bytes
                EQUS" bytes"
1345
1346
                EQUD &ODOD
1347
                EQUB 255
```

Program 3.1. PROCinfo - provides details on system pseudo-variables (cont.).

1348 .store 1349 EQUB 0 1350] 1351 NEXT 1352 ENDPROC

Program 3.1. PROCinfo - provides details on system pseudo-variables (cont.).

suggest, however, that it is saved to tape or disk with the filename STATUS. This is because INFO is generally recognised as a disk filing system command and therefore the command *INFO could not be used to load and run the program from disk whereas *STATUS would be acceptable. When executed, the program prints the hexadecimal values of the following:

PAGE
HIMEM
LOMEM
TOP
Program size
Next free location
Memory remaining

All the information required to calculate each of these values can be found in zero page. Figure 3.1 lists the byte allocation for the first couple of dozen locations.

The assembler is quite straightforward and is split into easy-to-handle segments. The screen information title is first printed onto the screen using the print_message subroutine (lines 1286 to 1297). The address of the string to be printed is transferred to the subroutine via the index registers. On return, the relevant data is extracted from zero

```
&00 - &01 : LOMEM
&02 &03 : VARTOP (top of variables)
&04 &05 : Basic Stack Pointer
&06 &07 : HIMEM
&08 - &09 : ERL
&0A : Text pointer index
&0B - &0C : Text pointer
&0D - &11 : RND seed
&12 - &13 : TOP
&16 - &17 : Error vector
&18 : PAGE byte
```

Fig. 3.1. Assignment of first 24 zero page bytes.

page and printed in hexadecimal format using a fairly standard hex to ASCII print routine, 'hex_out' (lines 1298 and 1317).

The values of PAGE, TOP, HIMEM, LOMEM and the next free location can be obtained directly from the BASIC workspace. The other values must be calculated, which generally involves a simple two-byte subtraction. Program size is calculated by subtracting TOP from PAGE and the amount of memory remaining by subtracting the top of variables (termed VARTOP by me!) from HIMEM. The actual value of VARTOP is not displayed by the program but could be simply added if so required.

The 'hex_out' routine works four bits at a time. Taking the high nibble first (as this is the first printed working left to right) and moving this into the low nibble, the conversion is performed using decimal addition with the decimal flag set with SED. The decimal addition of &90 converts the binary values 0 to 9 into the range &90 to &99 with the carry flag set. The addition of a further &40 converts these values to the range &30 to &39 with the carry set, which corresponds to the correct ASCII codes for the values 0 to 9. If the original nibble held &A to &F, adding &90 gives values in the range &0 to &5 (remember we are working with decimal addition). Addition of a further &40 with the carry set gives a final result in the range &41 to &46, the ASCII codes for A to F. The low nibble is treated in the same manner to produce the second digit before the decimal flag is cleared.

Using STATUS is straightforward; just perform a CALL to the assembly address. The BASIC primer generates the 372 bytes of code above a lowered HIMEM and can be called using function key 0. Figure 3.2 shows a typical output of the machine code.

Program Information Service

PAGE **%1000** TOP \$2559 2

HIMEM # \$7A00 LOMEM : &2559

Program Size=%0959 bytes

Next Free Location≈\$2607

Memory Remaining=%5339 bytes

Fig. 3.2. Typical output produced by Program 3.2.

Variable lister

PROCvars generates a useful variable lister that occupies a compact 103 bytes of memory, the cassette RS 423 buffer in the demonstration. Five bytes of workspace are required in addition, and two bytes of these must be in zero page to facilitate indirect addressing.

```
10 REM *** LIST ALL PROGRAM VARIABLES
   20 PRODVars(&70,&71,&73,&A00)
   30 #KEY 1 CALL%A00!M
   40 END
   50 :
 1400 DEF PROCyars(asc, varpointer, varstr
ing.addr)
 1401 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 1402 P%≃addr
                 OPT pass
 1403 E
 1404 .variables
                LDA #12
 1405
 1406
                JSR &FFEE
                LDA #14
 1407
                JSR %FFEE
 1408
                LDA #65
 1409
                STA asc
 1410
                LDA #882
 1411
 1412
                STA varpointer
                LDA #4
 1413
                STA varpointer+1
 1414
 1415 .1000
                LDY #1
 1416
                LDA (varpointer), Y
 1417
                BEO update
 1418
                STA varstring+1
 1419
                LDY #0
 1420
                LDA (varpointer),Y
 1421
 1422
                 STA varstring
 1423 .next_var
                 LDA #13
 1424
                 JSR &FFE3
 1425
 1426
                 LDA asc
                 JSR &FFE3
 1427
 1428
                 LDY #2
 1429 .print_loop
                 LDA ( varstring), Y
 1430
                 BEQ end_print
 1431
```

Program 3.2.PROCvars - lists all program variables.

```
1432
                JSR%FFE3
1433
                INY
1434
                JMP print loop
1435 .end print
1436
                LDY #1
1437
                LDA ( varstring).Y
1438
                BEG update
1439
                TAX
1440
                DEY
1441
                LDA (varstring).Y
1442
                STA varstring
1443
                STX varstring+1
1444
                JMP next var
1445 .update
1446
                LDA #2
1447
                CLC
1448
                ADC varpointer
1449
                CMP #&F6
1450
                BEQ finished
1451
                STA varpointer
1452
                INC asc
                JMP 1cop
1453
1454 .finished
1455
                LDA #13
1456
                JSR &FFE3
1457
                LDA #15
1458
                JSR &FFE3
1459
                RTS
1460 I
1461 NEXT
1462 ENDEROC
```

Program 3.2. PROCvars - lists all program variables (cont.).

An understanding of variable storage is essential to follow the program's operation. In addition to the resident integer variables there are basically two other types of variable. One of these variables is postfixed with • % sign to signify that it is also an integer, while a variable without the % defines that it is a floating point variable. When a program is run, the BASIC interpreter extracts each variable from the program and places it in fixed format above the main program and below TOP. The format is as follows:

- (a) A two-byte address which points to the next variable starting with the same letter. If none are present these bytes contain zero.
- (b) The variable name in ASCII format excluding the first letter of the variable, e.g. START is stored as TART.
- (c) A zero byte to mark the end of the variable name.

(d) The binary representation of the value assigned to that variable. This is stored in four bytes for an integer variable and five bytes for a floating point variable.

We can see from item (a) that it is quite easy to move from one variable to another, starting with the same letter, simply by extracting the address pointer from each variable 'definition' in turn. However, we need to know exactly where the first variable is located and Acorn have provided, by design, a variable pointer table on Page 4 in block zero RAM. Figure 3.3 details the locations holding the pointers for the characters A to Z and a to z. If both locations for particular character contain zero then no variable beginning with that letter is present.

Character	LSB address	MSB address
Λ	&482	&483
В	&484	&485
C	&486	&487
D	& 488	&489
E	&48A	&48B
F	&48C	&48D
G	&48E	&48F
H	&490	&491
1	&492	&493
J	&494	&495
K	&496	&497
L	&498	&499
M	&49A	&49B
N	&49C	&49D
O	&49E	&49F
P	&4A0	&4A1
Q	&4A2	&4A3
R	&4A4	&4A5
S	&4A6	&4A7
T	&4A8	&4A9
\mathbf{U}	&4AA	&4AB
V	&4AC	&4AD
W	&4AE	&4AF
X	&4B0	&4B1
Y	&4B2	&4B3
Z	&4B4	&4B5
a	&4C2	&4C3

Character	LSB address	MSB address
b	& 4C4	&4C5
c	&4C6	&4C7
d	&4C8	&4C9
e	&4CA	&4CB
f	&4CC	&4CD
g	&4CE	&4CF
h	&4D0	&4D1
i	&41)2	&4D3
j	&41)4	&4D5
k 1	&4D6 &4D8	&4D7 &4D9
m	&4DA	&4DB
Π	&4DC	&4DD
0	&4DE	&4DF
Р	&4E0	&4E1
q	&4E2	&4E3
L	&4E4	&4E5
S	&4E6	&4E7
t	&4E8	&4E9
и	&4EA	&4EB
V	&4EC	&4ED
W	&4EE	&4EF
X	& 4F0	&4F1
У	&4F2	&4F3
Z	&4F4	&4F5

Fig. 3.3. Variable start pointers.

Program lowdown

Figure 3.4 flowcharts the program's operation. The first ten lines of assembler clear the screen, place it into paged mode, save the ASCII code for A in 'asc' and seed the variable pointer table start address, &482, into a zero page vector.

The main program loop is entered at line 1415 and commences by extracting the most significant byte from the pointer table. For a variable to be present, this bye must be non-zero as no variables can be placed in zero page. If it is zero a branch to update is performed, otherwise the low byte address is accessed and seeded into a second vector, pointer.

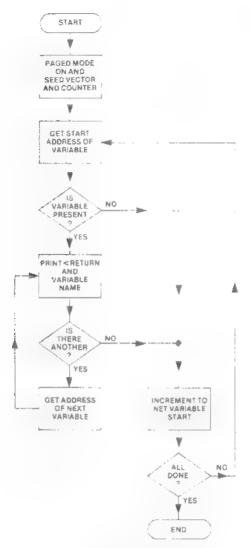


Fig. 3.4.PROCvars flowchart.

Lines 1423 to 1427 print a carriage return followed by the first character of the variable saved in asc. Using post-indexed indirect addressing, the print_loop (lines 1429 to 1434) extract each variable character from the program workspaced, printing each until the zero terminating byte is encountered.

The linking address from the beginning of the variable definition is then sought. If this is zero a branch to update is performed, otherwise the link address is placed into the pointer vector and the next variable name printed. The update routine (lines 1445 to 1453) first increments the var_pointer vector by two to move onto the next character associated bytes, and increments the character value, asc, by one. The program terminates when the last location in the variable pointer table is reached (line 1449 and 1450). Finally, Figure 3.5 illustrates a typical output of the program, listing the variables in the program itself!

asc addr end_print finished loop next_var pass print_loop update varpointer varstring variables

Fig. 3.5. Typical output produced by Program 3.3.

Program fact sheets

Program 3.1

Procedure title : PROCinfo
Line numbers : 1200 to 1352
Variables required : current.addr
Length : 372 bytes

Zero page requirements : 2 bytes (anywhere in memory)

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 3.2

Procedure title : PROCvars Line numbers : 1400 to 1462 Length : 103 bytes

Zero page requirements: 5 bytes, four forming vectors

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Four

Program Formatters

BASIC's LISTO command allows a limited amount of control in producing formatted listings, inserting spaces to indent loops and structures as required. The two programs presented in this chapter provide an extended formatting option for either BASIC or assembler programs; indeed, the Assembler Formatter was used to produce the clear listing within this book, inserting ten spaces between line number and mnemonic but leaving labels un-indented and clearly separated from the listing.

```
>LIST
   10 REM * A Basic Formatted Listing *
   20 FOR loop=0 TO 100
   30 PRINT loop : NEXT loop
  40 INPUT "A number" N%
  50 IF N%=10 PRINT"Correct" ELSE PRINT
 "wrong"
  60 REPEAT : INPUT "Code" C$
  70 FOR wait=0 TO 1000 : NEXT wait
  80 UNTIL C$="END"
>LIST
   10 REM * A Basic Formatted Listing *
  20
       FOR loop=0 TO 100
         PRINT 1000
  30
       : NEXT loop
  40
       INPUT "A number" N%
  50
       IF N%=10 PRINT"Correct"
       ELSE PRINT "wrong"
      REPEAT
  60
       : INPUT "Code" C$
  70
        FOR wait=0 TO 1000
         : NEXT wait
  80
        UNTIL C$="END"
```

Fig. 4.1. A BASIC listing with and without the BASIC formatter.

The BASIC formatter splits multistatement lines by issuing a carriage return each time it encounters a colon. It also splits IF...THEN...ELSE structures in addition to indenting them along with REPEAT...UNTIL and FOR...NEXT loops. Figure 4.1 shows the type of listing the BASIC Formatter is capable of. Now for the programs!

The BASIC Formatter (Program 4.1)

The basic_format procedure assembles its machine code into Page 9 of block zero RAM. This area has a number of uses (in addition to housing our machine code) and is more normally associated with ENVELOPEs 5 16, the speech buffer, cassette and RS 423 buffer.

The routine has two entry points - &900 and &928 in this case and function keys 1 and 2 have been programmed to call these locations. These two entries simply turn the formatter on and off respectively.

The 'on' entry point (line 1485) first prints the formatter on message before storing the current value of LISTO, found at &1F, in a byte above the program. Its maximum value of 7 is then inserted. The WRCHV vector contents are extracted and saved and the WRCHV pointed to the 'format' entry point at line 1521. The 'off'

```
10 REM *** LISTING FORMATTER ***
 20 PROChasic_format(%900)
 30 *KEYO CALL %900:M
 40 *KEY1 CALL $928!M
 50 END
 60 :
1480 DEF PROChasic_format(addr)
1481 interpreter=&EOA4
1482 FOR pass=0 T8 3 STEP3
1483 F%≃addr
1484 [OPT pass
1485 .on
                      LDX #&00
1486
1487 .next character
1488
                      LDA message, X
                      JSR &FFEJ
1489
1490
                      INX
1491
                      CMP#13
1492
                      BNE next_character
                      LDA &1F
1493
1494
                      STA listo
```

Program 4.1. PROCbasic_format - neatly formats ■ BASIC listing.

```
LDX #8-07
1495
                      STX &1F
1496
                      LDA %20E
1497
149B
                      STA address
                      LDA &20F
1499
                      STA address+1
1500
                      LDA #format MOD 256
1501
                      STA $20E
1502
                      LDA #format BIV 256
1503
                      STA &20F
1504
1505
                      RTS
1506 .off
1507
                      LDX #3:00
1508 .next_character
                      LDA message2,X
1509
1510
                      JSR &FFE3
1511
                      INX
1512
                      CMP #13
                      BNE next character
1513
                      LDA address
1514
                      STA $20E
1515
                      LDA address+1
1516
                      STA $20F
1517
                      LDA listo
1518
                      STA &1F
1519
1520
                      RTS
1521 .format
                      PHA
1522
1523
                      CMP #ASC(":")
1524
                      BNE no colon
                      JSR output
1525
                      LDA #&00
1526
                      STA byte
1527
1528
                      STA byte+1
1529
                      BEG not else
1530 .no_colon
1531
                      LDA #&01
                      CMP &1E
1532
1533
                      BNE not same
                      LDA #$00
1534
                      STA byte+2
1535
1536
                      STA byte+3
                      STA byte+4
1537
1538 .not_same
1539
                      CPY #800
1540
                      BEQ carry on
1541 .not_else
                      PLA
1542
                      JMP interpreter
1543
```

Program 4.1. PROCbasic_format - neatly formats a BASIC listing (cont.).

```
1545
                           LDA &37
   1546
                           CMP #&E7
                           BNE not if
   1547
                           INC byte+2
   1548
   1549 .not_if
   1550
                           CMP #&8B
                           BNE not else
   1551
   1552
                           INC byte+3
   1553
                           JSR output
                           JSR interpreter
   1554
                           JMP not else
   1555
   1556 .output
   1557
                           LDA #$OA
                           JSR interpreter
   1558
   1559
                           LDA #&OD
                           JSR interpreter
   1560
                           CLC
   1561
   1562
                           LDA &3B
   1563
                           ADD &3D
                           ADC byte+2
   1564
   1545
                           TAX
   1566
                           INX
                           LDA #&20
   1547
                           JSR interpreter
   1568
   1569
                           JSR interpreter
   1570
                           JSR interpreter
   1571 .more_spaces
   1572
                           JSR interpreter
   1573
                           JSR interpreter
   1574
                           DEX
   1575
                           BNE more_spaces
   1576
                           RTS
   1577 .message
   1578
                           EQUS" Formatter on!
   1579
                           EQUB 7
   1580
                           EQUB 13
   1581 .message2
   1582
                           EQUS" Formatter off
  2.10
   1583
                           EQUB 7
   1584
                           EQUB 13
   1585 .byte
   1586
                           EQUS"
   1587 .address
                           EQUS" "
   1588
   1589 .listo EQUB O
   1590 ]
   1591 NEXT pass
   1592 ENDPROC
Program 4.1. PROChasic_format - neatly formats a BASIC listing (cont.).
```

1544 .carry_on

36

entry, line 1506, simply reverses these procedures. Line 1518 could be changed if required to make the formatter clear the LISTO option each time it is switched off by replacing it with

LDA#0

On entry into 'format', through the reset WRCHV the accumulator contains the character to be written. This is tested to see if it is a colon. If this test fails a branch to 'no_colon' is performed. Assuming a colon is present, the 'output' routine at line 1556 is called to perform a line feed and carriage return and a series of spaces printed. The output routine uses a direct jump into the MOS to do the printing. This is necessary as we have intercepted the normal WRCHV address. Incidently, disassembling from this address, &E0A4, provides an interesting insight into how the Beeb programs the CRTC to display characters. As a machine code programmer you must be in possession of a suitable disassembler, so have a look! But I digress, so back to the program description. On return from the output call (line 1526) the 'byte' locations, which act as counters, are cleared and a forced branch to 'not_else' is performed, which prints the character to the screen (line 1541).

Routing around the rest of the code takes place if any of the indenting loop commands already mentioned are identified by intercepting the count value held at &IE and used by LISTO. Special treatment of the IF statement is required to ensure that any subsequent ELSE is generated both on a new line and further indented – this is because ELSE is normally ignored by LISTO. These two commands are identified by their token values before the 'interpreter' call hands them over to the BASIC detokenising routine for expansion. The codes and the entry points are as follows:

IF (= &E7) entry at line 1546 ELSE (= &8B) entry at line 1550

The byte at &37 is used by the BASIC interpreter to hold the current command token (line 1545).

The Assembler Formatter (Program 4.2)

This utility is probably the one I use most of all along with the global search and replace utility presented in Chapter 7. I find that the neatest way to present assembler listings is in the manner used throughout this book; the mnemonics are indented and clearly

distinguishable from labels, thus making the program easy to read and follow through. The most obvious way to perform this task is simply to tap in spaces as required at the keyboard as the program is entered, but this is boring, time-consuming and extremely wasteful of memory which can be of a premium in the hi-res graphics modes. Thus, Program 4.2 was conceived.

```
10 REM *** ASSEMBLER FORMATTER ***
 20 PRDCass format (&COO)
 30 #KEYO CALL &COO!M
 40 #KEY1 CALL &C291M
 50 END
 60 ±
1600 DEF PROCass format (addr)
1601 aswrch=?&20E+(?&20F#256)
1602 FDR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
1603 P%=addr
1604 E
1605
               OPT pass
1606 .on
               LDX #0
1607
1608 .nextchr
                LDA message. X
1609
                JSR %FFE3
1610
                INX
1611
               CMP #13
1612
               BNE nextchr
1613
               LDA#0
1614
               STA byte +1
1615
               LDA &20E
1616
1617
               STA byte+2
1618
               LDA &ZOF
1619
               STA byte+3
               LDA #assembler MOD 256
1620
               STA &20E
1621
               LDA #assembler DIV 256
1622
               STA &20F
1623
                RTS
1624
1625 .off
                LDX #0
1626
1627 .nextchr
1628
                LDA message2.X
1629
                JSR &FFE3
                INX
1630
                CMP #13
1631
                BNE nextchr
1632
                LDA byte+2
1633
```

Program 4.2. PROCass_format - makes an assembler listing more readable.

```
1634
                 STA &20E
1435
                 LDA byte+3
1636
                 STA $20F
1637
                 RTS
1638 .assembler
1639
                 STA byte
1640
                 PHP
1641
                 TXA
1642
                PHA
1643
                LDA byte+1
1644
                BNE testshut
1645
                LDA byte
1646
                CMP #ASC("[")
1647
                BNE return
1648
                STA byte+1
1649 .return
1650
                LDA byte
1651
                JSR oswrch
1652
                PLA
1653
                TAX
1654
                 PLP
1655
                LDA byte
1656
                RTS
1657 .testshut
1458
                 LDA byte
1659
                CMP #93
1660
                 BNE testor
1661
                LDA#O
1662
                STA byte+1
1663
                BEQ return
1664 .testcr
1665
                CMP #13
1666
                BNE testlabel
1667
                LDA #0
1668
                STA byte+4
1669
                BEO return
1670 .testlabel
                CMP #ASC(",")
1671
1672
                PEO signal
1673
                CMP #ASC(":")
1674
                BCC return
                LDA byte+4
1675
1676
                BNE return
1677
                 LDX #10
1678
                LDA #32
1679 .spaces
1680
                JSR oswrch
1681
                DEX
```

Program 4.2. PROCass_format - makes an assembler listing more readable (cont.).

```
1682
                BNE spaces
1683
                LDA #1
1684 .signal
1685
                STA byte+4
1686
                JMP return
1687 .message
                EQUS"Assembler
1688
                EQUS"Formatter On!"
1687
                EDUM &ODO7
1690
1691 .message2
1692
                EQUS"Assembler
                EQUS"Formatter Off!
1693
                EDUM &ODO7
1694
1695 .byte
                EQUS"
1696
1697 1
169B NEXT
1699 ENDPROC
```

Program 4.2. PROCass_format - makes an assembler listing more readable (cont.).

Like its BASIC predecessor, the Assembler Formatter has two entry points to turn the utility on and off. The 'on' entry point is at line 1606 which outputs the 'Assembler Formatter On' message before saving and redirecting the contents of the WRCHV to the 'assembler' entry point at line 1638. The 'off' routine, entered at line 1625 performs the reverse operation.

When the formatter is on, all output produced by the Beeb is channelled through the 'assembler' routine via WRCHV. After preserving the program status (lines 1639 to 1642) the accumulator's contents are tested to see if they contain the '[' code to indicate the start of assembler (line 1646). If this test succeeds, the code is stored at 'byte+1'. As you may have noticed, the code immediately before this tested this particular location to see if it were non-zero which would denote an already open assembler listing. This test routine would therefore be jumped over to the test_shut routine (line 1657). This section of code first tests to see if the close bracket, end of assembler mark, has been found in which case the 'byte' values are reset and the normal oswrch output pursued.

If a carriage return is not present (lines 1664 to 1669) the 'test_label' routine is invoked. If the label start character, a full-stop, is present the fact is signalled in 'byte+4' and the routine completed; a delimiting colon is treated in a similar manner. If neither of these characters is encountered, the X register is loaded with the number of padding spaces to be printed (line 1677). I chose to use ten though you

can adjust this to your own taste. The 'spaces' loop is entered and exited on completion of printing the ten spaces. Mnemonics will subsequently be printed from this ten spaces in position, while labels are printed as usual.

Program fact sheets

Program 4.1

Procedure title : PROCbasic_format

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 1480 to 1592 Length : 227 bytes

Zero page requirements: none Registers changed: none

Program 4.2

Procedure title : PROCass_format

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 1600 to 1699 Length : 214 bytes

Zero page requirements: none Registers changed: none

Chapter Five The Screen

If you are interested in the graphics capabilities of the BBC Micro there will no doubt be occasions when you wish to save the graphics design you have created so that it can be recalled at a later date. Programs 5.1 and 5.2 will facilitate this using the OSFILE call to perform these tasks rapidly in machine code. The third program in this chapter, Program 5.3, provides a printer screen dump program that will work on the Epson, Star and compatible printers.

Save Screen Memory (Program 5.1)

The OSFILE routine is entered in the MOS at &FFDD. Like the majority of the operating system calls it expects to be pointed in the direction of a parameter block via an address held within the index registers. The parameter block needs to contain all the information required by the call to operate. Figure 5.1 details the OSFILE parameter block.

XY+0 to XY+1 : Fifename address, Filename must be terminated by RETURN.

XY+2 to XY+5 : File load address, stored low byte first. XY+6 to XY+9 : Run address of file, stored low byte first.

XY+10 to XY+13 : Data start address to be saved.

XY+14 to XY+17 : Data end address.

Fig. 5.1. The OSFILE parameter block.

The OSFILE call can perform up to eight different tasks depending upon the value in the accumulator when the call is effected and these are detailed in Figure 5.2. The call code we are interested in here is with the accumulator holding 0.

```
0 : Save block of memory as detailed in parameter block.
```

1 : Write information in parameter block to catalogue entry.

2 : Write load address only for existing file.

3 : Write the run address only for an existing file.

4 : Write file attributes only for an existing file.

5 : Read a file's catalogue information to parameter block.

6 : Delete file named in parameter block.

255: Load the file detailed in the parameter block.

Fig. 5.2. The OSFILE call codes

Program 5.1 is relatively straightforward, but the amount of screen memory to be saved will vary depending on the currently selected screen mode. For example, MODEs 0,1 and 2 utilise a full 20K from &3000 while MODEs 4 and 5 require 10K from &5800, and the amazingly versatile MODE 7 needs just a meagre 1K from &7C00.

```
10 REM *** SAVE SCREEN MEMORY ***
 20 PRODsavescreen (&COO)
 30 inc=5
 40 X=640 : Y=512
 50 MODE 4
 60 FOR loop=1 TO 50
 70 MOVE X.Y
 80 DRAW X+inc.Y
 90 DRAW X+inc, Y+inc
100 DRAW X, Y+inc
110 DRAW X.Y
120 X=X-20 : Y=Y-20
130 inc=inc+40
140 NEXT
150 CALL %COO
140 END
170 :
1700 DEF PROCsavescreen (addr)
1701 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
1702 P%=addr
1703 E
1704
               OPT pass
1705 .save_screen
               LDA #135
1706
               JSR &FFF4
1707
               TYA
1708
               BEQ dump1
1709
1710
               CMP#3
1711
               BCC dump1
```

Program 5.1. PROCsavescreen - saves the screen memory to tape or disk.

```
1712
                CMP#4
1713
                BEQ dump2
1714
                CMP#5
1715
                BEQ dump2
                CMP #7
1716
                BEQ teletext
1717
1718 Jerror
                LDY #0
1719
1720 .loop
1721
                LDA message.Y
1722
                BEQ finished
1723
                JSR &FFE3
1724
                INY
1725
                BNE loop
1726 .finished
1727
                RTS
1728 .dump1
                LDA #8/30
1729
1730
                STA paramblk+3
1731
                STA paramblk+7
1732
                STA paramblk+%0B
                LDA #0
1733
1734
                JMP osfile
1735 .dump2
1736
                LDA #858
                STA paramblk+3
1737
1739
                STA paramb1k+7
1739
                STA paramblk+&OB
1740
                LDA#0
1741
                JMP csfile
1742 .teletext
                LDA #&7C
1743
1744
                STA paramblk+3
1745
                STA carambik+7
1746
                STA paramblk+%OB
1747
                LDA #0
1748
                JMP osfile
1749 .osfile
1750
                LDX #paramblk MOD 256
1751
                LDY #paramblk DIV 256
1752
                JMF %FFDD
1753 .filename
1754
                EQUS"SSAVED"
1755
                EQUB 13
1756 .paramblk
1757
                EQUB filename MOD 256
1758
                EQUB filename DIV 256
```

Program 5.1. PROCsavescreen – saves the screen memory to tape or disk (cont.).

```
1759
                EQUD&3000
1760
                EGUD O
1761
                EQUD&3000
1762
                EQUD&7FFF
1763
     .messace
1764
                EQUB 7
1765
                EQUS"Not a graphics Mode"
1766
                EQUB 13
1767
                EQUB 0
1768 1
1769 NEXT
1770 ENDPROC
```

Program 5.1. PROCsavescreen – saves the screen memory to tape or disk (cont.).

The program acts 'intelligently' in this respect by obtaining the current screen mode from the Y register after an *FX135 call (lines 1706 to 1708). If, after the comparison of line 1710, the carry is clear a MODE of less than 3 is indicated and the branch to 'dump1' performed. If a mode value of 4 or 5 is determined, 'dump2' is sought while a branch to 'teletext' is executed if 7 is returned. Note that the 'error' loop is entered if the screen is in MODE 3 or MODE 6; this prints out the 'Not a graphics Mode' message from line 1765 and the routine is exited.

Each of these sections of code simply seed the first page number of the current graphics MODE into the correct places within the parameter block. If the graphics MODE was MODE then the branch to 'dump1' would seed the value &30 into the three bytes at paramblk+3, paramblk+7 and paramblk+&0B, prior to loading the accumulator with 0 and jumping to 'osfile' at line 1749. Here the address of 'paramblk' is loaded into the index registers and a JMP to OSFILE at &FFDD performed.

The parameter block is located at the top of the calling machine code, lines 1756 to 1762 and the EQU functions used to prime the static contents. The filename is stored at 'filename' (line 1753) and I have chosen to use SSAVED, but this can be changed to suit your own needs, of course.

The BASIC test routine simply draws a succession of squares in MODE 4 before using the machine code to save the screen's contents. The following program, Program 5.2, can be used to reload screen memory.

Load Screen Memory (Program 5.2)

The load screen memory program is essentially the same program as its saving counterpart. The main difference is that the accumulator is loaded with 255 to indicate a load operation to the MOS.

```
10 REM *** LOAD SCREEN MEMORY ***
  20 PROCloadscreen (%C00)
  30 MSDE4
  40 CALL %C00
  50 END
  60 :
1800 DEF PROCloadscreen (addr)
1801 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
1802 P%=addr
180% E
                OPT pass
1804
1805 .load_screen
                LDA #135
1804
                JSR &FFF4
1807
                TYA
1809
                BEQ dump1
1809
1810
                CMP#3
1811
                BCC dump1
                CMP#4
1812
1813
                BEG dump2
1814
                CMP#5
1615
                BEQ dump2
1816
                CMP #7
1817
                BEG teletext
1818 .error
1819
                LDY #0
1820 .loop
1821
                LDA message, Y
1822
                BEO finished
1823
                JSR &FFE3
1824
                INY
1825
                BNE 1000
1826 .finished
1827
                RTS
1828 .dump1
1829
                LDA #&30
1830
                STA paramblk+3
1831
                STA paramblk+7
1832
                STA parambik+&OB
1833
                LDA #255
1834
                JMP osfile
```

Program 5.2. PROCloadscreen - loads ■ saved graphics screen back into screen memory.

```
1835 .dump2
1836
                LDA #858
                STA paramb1k+3
1837
1838
                STA paramblk+7
                STA paramblk+&OB
1839
                LDA#255
1840
1841
                JMP osfile
1942 .teletext
1943
                LDA #8/70
1844
                STA paramblk+3
                STA paramblk+7
1845
                STA paramblk+&OB
1846
                LDA #255
1847
1848
                JMP osfile
1849 .osfile
                LDX #paramblk MOD 256
1850
                LDY #paramblk DIV 256
1251
                JMP %FFDD
1852
1853 .filename
                EQUS"SSAVED"
1854
                EQUB 13
1855
1856 .paramblk
                EQUB filename MOD 256
1857
1858
                EQUB filename DIV 256
1859
                EBUD%3000
1840
                FOUR O
                EQUD#3000
1861
                EQUD&7FFF
1862
1863 .message
                EQUB 7
1864
                EQUS"Not a graphics Mode"
1865
                EQUB 13
1866
                EQUB 0
1867
1868 ]
1869 NEXT
1870 ENDFROC
```

Program 5.2. PROCloadscreen – loads a saved graphics screen back into screen memory (cont.).

Printer Screen Dumper

If you own or have aspirations to own a printer then you will certainly wish to be able to dump the contents of screen to the printer at some time to obtain that all important hard copy, be it a graphics masterpiece or just copy of a some neatly formatted data. Program 5.3 was designed specifically for use with 'bit-mapped' printers such

as the Epson and Star ranges. The program is a stand-alone version and includes a short graphics program at the start which will be dumped correctly if you have a suitable printer attached.

```
10 REM *** PRINTER SCREEN DUMPER ***
   20 REM ***
                 EPSON EX and STAR ***
   30 MODE 5
   40 X=640 : Y=512
   50 increment=5
   60 FOR 1000=1 TO 50
   70 MOVE X,Y
   80 DRAW X+increment.Y
   90 DRAW X+increment.Y+increment
  100 DRAW X, Y+increment
  110 DRAW X.Y
  120 X=X-20: Y=Y-20
  130 increment=increment+40
  140 NEXT
  150 PRDCscreen dump($70,$71,$72,$73,$7
5, &76, &2E00)
  160 CALL screen_dump
  170 END
  180 :
 1900 DEFPROCscreen dump(xlc,xhi,ylo,yhi
.byte,bits,addr)
 1901 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
 1902 P%=addr
 1903 E
                  OPT pass
 1904 .screen_dump
 1905
                 LDA #2
                 JSR &FFEE
 1906
 1907
                 LDA #1
 1708
                 JSR &FFEE
 1909
                LDA #27
 1910
                 JSR WEFEE
 1911
                LDA #1
 1912
                 JSR &FFEE
 1913
                LDA #65
 1914
                 JSR &FFEE
 1915
                LDA #1
 1916
                 JSR &FFEE
 1917
                LDA #8
 1718
                 JSR &FFEE
 1919
                LDA #1
 1920
                 JSR &FFEE
 1921
                 LDA #10
 1922
                 JSR &FFEE
 1923
                 LDA# &FF
```

Program 5.3. PROCscreen_dump - outputs the graphics screen to ■ connected printer.

```
STA ylo
1924
1925
                LDA# 83
1925
                STA yhi
1927 .next now
1928
                LDA# &0
1929
                STA xlc
1930
                LDA# &0
1931
                STA shi
                JSR duel density
1932
1933
                LDA# &1
                JSR &FFEE
1934
                LDA# &D
1935
                JSR %FFEE
1936
1937
                SEC
1939
                LDA ylo
1939
                SBC# 32
                STA ylo
1940
                BCS check_finish
1941
                DEC vhi
1942
1943 .check_finish
1944
                LDA vhi
                CMP# %FF
1945
1946
                BNE next row
1947
                LDA yle
1948
                CMP# %FF
1949
                BNE next_row
1950
                LDA #1
1951
                JSR %FFEE
                LDA #12
1952
                JSR %FFEE
1953
1954
                LDA #1
                JSR &FFEE
1955
1956
                LDA #27
1957
                JSR &FFEE
1958
                LDA #1
1959
                JSR &FFEE
1960
                LDA #64
                JSR %FFEE
1961
1962
                LDA #3
1963
                JSR %FFEE
1964
                RTS
1965 .duel_density
1966
                LDA# &1
1967
                JSR &FFEE
1968
                LDA #27
1969
                JSR &FFEE
1970
                LDA #1
1971
                JSR &FFEE
```

Program 5.3. PROCscreen_dump - outputs the graphics screen to a connected printer (cont.).

```
1972
                LDA #76
1973
                JSR &FFEE
1974
                LDA #1
                JSR &FFEE
1975
1976
                LDA #128
                JSR &FFEE
1977
1978
                LDA #1
                JSR %FFEE
1979
1980
                LDA #2
                JSR &FFEE
1981
1982 .next_byte
1983
                LDA #0
1784
                STA bits
1985
                LDA #128
                STA byte
1986
1987 .read_pixel
                LDA #9
1988
1939
                LDX #x1o
                LDY #0
1990
                 JSR &FFF1
1991
1992
                LDA ×10+4
1993
                AND #8FF
                REQ step4
1994
1995
                LDA byte
                ORA bits
1996
1997
                 STA bits
1998 .step4
1999
                 SEC
2000
                 LDA ylo
2001
                 SBC #4
2002
                 STA ylo
                 BCS rotate
2003
2004
                DEC vhi
2005 .rotate
2006
                CLC
2007
                ROR byte
2008
                 BCC read_pixel
2009 .print_pattern
2010
                LDA #1
2011
                JSR &FFEE
2012
                LDA bits
2013
                JSR &FFEE
2014
                CLC
2015
                LDA ylc
                ADC #32
2016
2017
                STA vlo
                BCC over
2018
2019
                INC yhi
```

Program 5.3. PROCscreen_dump - outputs the graphics screen to ■ connected printer (cont.).

```
2020 .over
2021
                CLC
                t DA xlo
2022
                ADC #2
2023
2024
                STA xlo
2025
                BCC leap frog
2026
                INC xhi
2027 .leap frog
2028
                LDA xhi
                CMP #5
2029
                BNE do again
2030
                RTS
2031
2032 .do_again
                JMP next byte
2033
2034 1
2035 NEXT pass
2036 ENDPROC
```

Program 5.3. PROCscreen_dump - outputs the graphics screen to a connected printer (cont.).

The machine code of the program assembles just below the memory required by either of the 20K screen modes. It would be a good idea to obtain a second source coding that will sit just below the MODE 4 and 5 memory, thus making the 'unused' screen memory available for use by the program. A suitable value for 'addr' in this instance would be &5600.

The major part of any graphics-printer dump program is spent preparing the pixel - in other words, converting it from its screen form into a form that the printer can handle and translate into selecting which of its eight dot-matrix pins it fires. (Yes, I know there are nine but we only use eight!) The steps required to perform this conversion process are summarised below:

- (a) Read a pixel off the screen.
- (b) Adjust the byte using suitable rotates.
- (c) Check a counter to see if byte is complete.
- (d) Adjust the value of Y and X as needed to allow for resolution changes.
- (e) Send the byte to the printer in the form of a VDU1 command.

Looking at the assembler program shows that the first section of code from line 1904 to 1926 is responsible for issuing a series of VDU1 codes to the printer using OSWRCH. In BASIC terms the following is performed:

VDU 2, 1, 27, 1, 65, 1, 8, 1, 10

The VDU 2 is used to enable the printer while the intermediate codes set the line spacing to \%\gamma_2 inches. The final VDU 10 performs a line feed. Much of the code comprises these VDUI codes and they could be more efficiently incorporated into a look-up table if required. I have persevered with the long-winded method mainly for reasons of clarity.

Lines 1922 to 1932 initialise the variables ylo, vhi and xlo, xhi. The pair ylo, yhi are loaded with &3FF which in decimal is 1023 and shows itself to be the maximum on-screen value of the Y axis. The xlo xhi combination are set to zero. The 'dual_density' subroutine is responsible for putting the printer in graphics gear and performs a BASIC VDU 1, 27, 1, 76, 1, 128, 2 selecting 640 dots per line in bit image mode.

Before printing, the current screen pixel details must be read from the screen. This is readily performed with OSWORD and the accumulator holding 9 (lines 1987 to 1992). The parameter block requires five bytes set out as follows using the declared variables:

low byte X coordinate xlo high byte X coordinate x hi low byte Y coordinate vlo. high byte Y coordinate vhi. result after OSWORD call $xlo\pm 4$

As can be seen, we have neatly used the program variables to form the parameter block of the call, a saving in coding and space when it works!

The byte to be sent to the printer is formed by rotating it through the carry flag position into the accumulator (lines 2003 to 2013) and printing it via OSWRCH. The rest of the general housekeeping is performed in lines up to 2033 and the whole process repeated until the 'check_finish' (line 1943) routine indicates a completed picture. The final succession of VDU'll calls issue form feed, place the printer into its more standard printing mode and disenable it. Figure 5.3 shows a dump produced by the program on my own printer.

One final point: always ensure that the graphics origin is set to its normal default position prior to calling the dump. This is best done by inserting a VDU 29,0;0; at the onset of the program. As it stands, the program looks at every screen coordinate: if any of these have been moved off the screen due to ■ redefined graphics origin then the pixel read routine will return-I or &FF, which will cause awful black bars and lines to be printed as part of your dump in the offscreen areas.



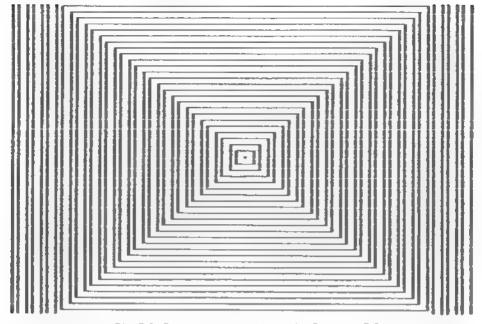


Fig. 5.3. Screen dump produced by Program 5.3.

Program fact sheets

Program 5.1

Procedure title : PROCsavescreen

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 1700 to 1770

Length : 140 bytes

Zero page requirements : page

Zero page requirements: none Registers changed: A, X, Y

Program 5.2

Procedure title : PROCloadscreen

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 1800 to 1870

Zero page requirements : none Registers changed : A,X,Y

Program 5.3

Procedure title : PROCscreen_dump

Variables required : xlo, xhi, ylo, yhi, byte, bits, addr

Line numbers : 1900 to 2036

Program length : 260 bytes

Zero page requirements : 7 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Six Softly, Softly

The Beeb allows the user to define characters using the VDU 23 command. This is followed by eight byte-sized numbers which represent the bit patterns of the eight bytes that form the character.

*** SOFT CHR CHARACTER DEFINITIONS ***

```
32,165, 12,169,224,133,114,169,
224:
     12, 133, 113, 169, 0, 133, 112, 133,
225:
     115, 133, 116, 168, 32, 148, 12, 165,
226:
227:
     115,208, 12,165,116,208, 8, 32,
    227, 12,208,240, 76,239, 12,165.
228:
    114, 32, 89, 12,169, 58, 32,238,
229:
    255, 169, 32, 32, 238, 255, 160, 0.
230:
     177,112, 32, 89, 12,169, 44,
231:
     238, 255, 200, 192, 8, 208, 241, 32,
232:
     227, 12,169, 0,133,115,133,116,
233:
     168, 169, 13, 32, 227, 255, 76, 20,
234:
235:
      12, 162, 0, 134, 117, 201, 100, 144,
236:
      8,233,100,232,134,117, 76, 93,
      12, 32,129, 12,162, 0,201, 10,
237:
     144, 6,233, 10,232, 76,110, 12,
238:
      32, 129, 12, 24, 105, 48, 76, 238,
239:
     255, 72,138,105, 48,201, 48,208,
240:
      6,166,117,208, 2,169, 32, 32,
241:
     238, 255, 104, 96, 160, 7, 177, 112,
242:
     24, 101, 115, 133, 115, 144,
                               2.230.
243:
     116, 136, 16, 242, 96, 162,
                                0,189,
244:
     180, 12, 48, 7, 32, 238, 255, 232,
245:
246:
      76, 167,
              12,
                   96, 10, 13, 10,
      42, 42, 42, 32, 83, 79, 70, 84,
247:
248:
              72, 82, 32, 67,
      32, 67,
      82, 65, 67, 84, 69, 82,
                                32,
249:
250:
      69.
          70,
              73, 78, 73, 84,
251:
      78, 83, 32, 42, 42, 42,
                               10.
     10, 13,255, 24,165,112,105,
                                    8,
252:
     133,112,230,114,240, 1, 96,
                                    32,
254: 231, 255, 104, 104, 96,
                           0, 0,
```

Fig. 6.1. A typical output produced by PROCyduchrs.

Primarily these definable characters. 224 to 255, are used to create new characters whether they be fancy stylised alphanumeric characters or, more commonly, games characters. Program 6.1 provides a routine that will display the full definitions of any of these characters that have been defined. Figure 6.1 shows the output produced by the program.

User-definable characters are stored in the soft character definition area on page &C between &C00 to &CFF. Machine code programmers will know this area better as an assembly area for their code! As mentioned, eight bytes are associated with each character; thus, character VDU 224 is allocated the eight bytes &C00 to &C07 inclusive; VDU 225 the bytes &C08 to &C0F, and on up to VDU 255 which is allocated the bytes &CF8 to &CFF. The first byte in each definition (the top-most one) is placed in the first byte of the corresponding memory location and so on — as Figure 6.2 illustrates.

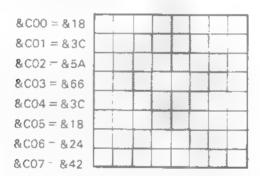


Fig. 6.2. The byte definition storage of user-defined character 224.

As Figure 6.1 showed, the program does not print out the contents of every character — merely the characters that are or seem to be defined. This is quite simple to determine. On a power-up or reset, the MOS clears this area of memory with zero, so all the program needs to do is to add up the bytes corresponding to each VDU character. If the result is zero, no definition is present and the next character is sought. If, on the other hand, the result is non-zero then a definition is assumed and the contents printed. I say 'assumed' because it might not be a proper definition — it may, of course, be machine code! Also, the last 5 characters in the buffer, VDU 250 to VDU 255, seem to be susceptible to having garbage placed into them by the MOS.

Figure 6.3 flowcharts the program's operation. The definition test just discussed is performed by the 'test_for_definition' routine (lines 2135 to 2147 in Program 6.1). The result of the summing is placed in the 'addition'

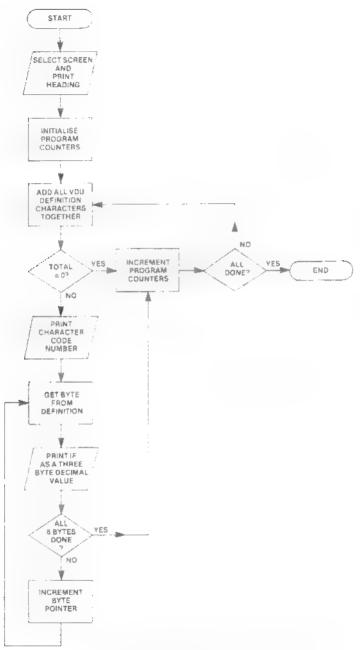


Fig. 6.3. The PROCyduchr flowchart.

bytes which are tested in the main program loop. If either are non-zero then a branch to 'print_definition' is executed (lines 2067 to 2070).

The 'print_definition' loop (lines 2074 to 2097 in Program 6.1)

begins by printing the VDU number of the current character followed by a colon. Each byte is then extracted in turn and printed to the screen in decimal form followed by a comma. After the last definition byte is printed a new line is printed and the next VDU character is sought. The 'update routine' (lines 2166 to 2173), as its name implies. increments all program counters and determines when every VDU character has been processed.

```
10
      REM # SOFT CHR VDU'S VERSION V2 #
   20
      REM #(c) Bruce Smith/Acorn User #
   30 PRDCvdhchr (&70, &72, &73, &75, &4000)
   40 *KEYO CALL &4000:M
   50 END
   60
2050 DEF PROCydhchr(soft_base.vdu_char
acter,addition_bytes,flag,addr)
      FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
2052 P%=&4000
2053 [
                  OPT pass
2054 .start
2055
                 JSR set_up_screen
2056
                 LDA #224
2057
                 STA vdu_character
2058
                 LDA #&C
2059
                 STA soft_base+1
2060
                 LDA #0
2061
                 STA soft_base
                 STA addition_bytes
2062
2063
                 STA addition bytes+1
2064
                 TAY
2065
       .main_loop
2066
                 JSR test_for_definition
2067
                 LDA addition_bytes
2068
                 BNE print definition
2069
                 LDA addition bytes+1
2070
                 BNE print definition
2071
                 JSR update
2072
                 BNE main loop
2073
                 JMP exit
2074
       .print_definition
2075
                 LDA vdu_character
2076
                 JSR binary_decimal_print
2077
                 LDA #ASC": "
2078
                 JSR &FFEE
2079
                 LDA #ASC" "
2080
                 JSR &FFEE
2081
                 LDY #0
2082
       .loop
```

Program 6.1. PROCyduchrs - lists the soft character definitions.

```
2083
                 LDA (&70),Y
2084
                 JSR binary_decimal_print
2085
                 LDA #ASC","
2086
                 JSR &FFEE
2087
                  TNY
2088
                 CPY #8
2089
                 BNE 100p
2090
                 JSR update
2091
                 LDA#O
2092
                 STA addition_bytes
2093
                 STA addition_bytes+1
2094
                  TAY
2095
                 LDA #13
2096
                  JSR &FFE3
2097
                 JMP main loop
2098
       .binary_decimal_print
2099
                 LDX #0
                  STX flag
2100
2101
       .hundreds
2102
                  EMP#100
2103
                  BCC no_hundreds
2104
                  SBC #100
2105
                  INX
2106
                  STX flag
2107
                  JMP hundreds
2108
       .no hundreds
2109
                  JSR print_decimal
2110
                 LDX #0
2111
       . tens
2112
                 CMP #10
2113
                 BCC no tens
2114
                 SBC #10
2115
                 INX
2116
                 JMP tens
2117
     -no_tens
2118
                 JSR print decimal
2119
                 CLE
2120
                 ADC #ASC"O"
2121
                 JMP &FFEE
2122
      .print_decimal
2123
                 PHA
2124
                 TXA
2125
                 ADC #ASC"O"
2126
                 CMP #ASC"0"
2127
                 BNE no zero
2128
                 LDX flag
2129
                 BNE no_zero
2130
                 LDA #32
```

Program 6.1, PROCvduchrs - lists the soft character definitions (cont.).

```
2131
      .no zero
2132
                 JSR &FFEE
2133
                 PLA
2134
                 RT5
2135
      .test_for_definition
2136
                 LDY#7
2137
      .check_loop
2138
                 LDA (&70),Y
2139
                 CLC
2140
                 ADC addition bytes
                 STA addition bytes
2141
2142
                 BCC no carry
2143
                 INC addition bytes+1
2144
     .no carry
2145
                 DEY
2146
                 BPL check loop
2147
                 RTS
2148
     .set_up_screen
2149
                 LDX#0
2150
     .next_character
2151
                 LDA table.X
2152
                 BMI done
2153
                 JSR &FFEE
2154
                 INX
2155
                 JMP next character
2156
     .done
2157
                 RTS
2158
     .table
2159
                 EQUB 22
2160
                 EQUB 6
2161
                 EGUD &ODOAODOA
                 EQUS" *** SOFT CHR"
2162
2163
                 EQUS" CHARACTER "
2164
                 EQUS"DEFINITIONS ***"
2165
                 EQUD %ODOAODOA
2166
                 EQUB 255
2167
      .update
2168
                 CLC
2169
                 LDA soft base
2170
                 ADC#8
2171
                 STA soft_base
2172
                 INC vdu_character
2173
                 BEQ exit
2174
                 RTS
2175
      .exit
2176
                 JSR &FFE7
2177
                 PLA
2178
                 PLA
```

Program 6.1. PROCvduchrs – lists the soft character definitions (cont.).

2179 RTS 2180 J 2181 NEXT pass 2182 ENDPROC

Program 6.1. PROCvduchrs - lists the soft character definitions (cont.).

The program incorporates a useful decimal printing routine between lines 2098 and 2134. This itself would be useful to have as separate procedure. Character base conversion can seem difficult, but like most things in life it is quite simple to do when you know how!

As it stands, the routine will convert an eight-bit binary number held in the accumulator into a three-digit decimal ASCII number, or more correctly a string of three ASCII characters. Thus, if the accumulator held 11110001 (&F1) the ASCII string "241" would be printed.

To perform this, it is first necessary to calculate how many hundreds, tens and units there are in the byte. All that is required to do this is to subtract 100 or 10 from the byte and increment mundreds or tens count each time the subtraction leaves a remainder. Using the byte &E1 mentioned above this would work as follows. First, the hundreds:

241 -100	
141	hundreds count=1
141 -100	
41	hundreds count=2
41	
-100	
-59	This result is negative

The final hundreds count is therefore 2. This can be converted into its ASCII code simply by adding ASC"0" and printing it.

Next, the tens count, and the value we use to start with is the remainder from the hundreds count.

60 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

$$\frac{41}{-10}$$

$$\frac{31}{31}$$

$$\frac{-10}{21}$$

$$\frac{21}{-10}$$

$$\frac{11}{10}$$

The final tens count is therefore 4, and adding ASC"0" to this will derive the ASCII code for 4 which can be printed. Finally, the units count is left as the remainder, I in this case. Again, ASC"0" needs to be added to this to get the character's ASCII code so that it can be printed.

Program fact sheet

Program 6.1

Procedure title : PROCvduchr

Variables Required : soft_base, vdu_character,

addition_bytes, flag, addr

Line numbers : 2050 to 2181

Length : 246 bytes

Zero page requirements : 6 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Seven

Global Variable Search and Replace

GREPL is the longest program in this book, a massive 582 bytes when assembled, but it is invaluable. Using it allows variable names within a program to be replaced throughout simply and easily. This eradicates the need to work through the program replacing them 'by hand', thus allowing new, more meaningful, names to be assigned or, if memory is tight, shorter names to be inserted.

Program Description

Because of the long nature of the program, I have chosen to present the program details in a line-by-line block format which if used in conjunction with the flowchart of Figure 7.1 and the description of variable storage in Chapter 3 should make its understanding much easier.

Line 2195: Clear occurrence counter.

Lines 2196 to 2198: Print 'variable' prompt.

Lines 2199 to 2202: Input variable name to be replaced into buffer, pointed to by the Index registers and save the strings length in 'olen'.

Lines 2203 to 2205: Print 'Replace with' prompt.

Lines 2206 to 2208: Input new variable name and store it in buffer pointed to by the Index registers.

Lines 2210 to 2213: Calculate difference in variable name lengths and save result.

Lines 2214 to 2217: Read current setting of OSHWM.

Lines 2219 to 2221: Clear registers and get first byte from program. Lines 2222 to 2227: If byte is ASCII return, check for the TOP marker &FF.

Lines 2228 to 2230: If TOP found perform OSNEWL and exit via 'report'.

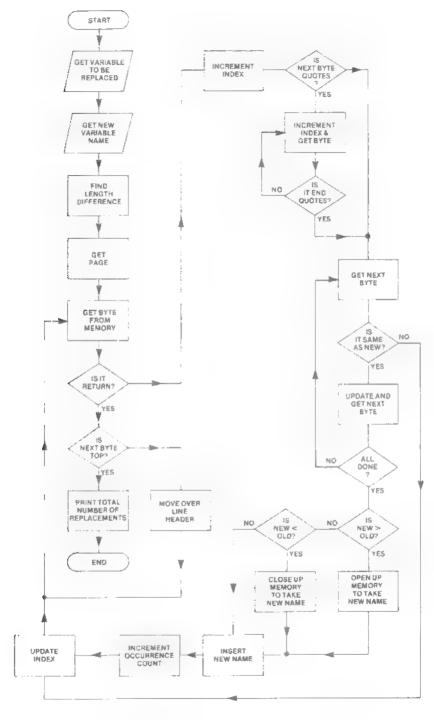


Fig. 7.1. Flowchart for PROCgrepl.

```
10 REM ***GLOBAL REPLACE - GREFL***
   20 himem=HIMEM
   30 himem=himem-%300
   40 HIMEM=bimem
   50 PROCorepl (%70,%72,%74,%76,%77,%78
.himem)
   40 *KEYO CALL HIMEMIM
   70 END
   80 ±
2190 DEF PROEgrep1 (current, last, link, o
len_nlen_result,himem)
2191 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
2192 P%=HIMEM
2193 IDFT pass
2194 .5lobal_replace
2195 LDA #0 :STA number
 2196 LDX #old_prompt MOD 256
 2197 LDY #old_prompt DIV 256
 2198 JSR print_string
 2199 LDX #old name store MCD 256
 2200 LDY #old name store DIV 256
 2201 JSR input_string
 2202 STA olen
 2203 LDX #new prompt MOD 254
 2204 LDY #new prompt DIV 256
 2205 JSR print_string
 2206 LDX #new_name_store MOD 256
 2207 LDY #new name_store DIV 256
 2208 JSR input string
 2209 .do again
 2210 SEC
 2211 STA nlen
 2212 SBC alen
 2213 STA result
 2214 LDA #883
 2215 JSR &FFF4
 2216 STX current
 2217 STY current+1
 2218 .main loop
 2219 LDX #0
 2220 TXA : TAY
 2221 LDA (current).Y
 2222 CMP #13
 2223 BNE not return
 2224 INY
 2225 LDA (current),Y
 2226 CMP #%FF
 2227 BNE over
```

Program 7.1. PROCgrept - a global search and replace facility.

```
2228 JSR &FFE7
2229 LDA number
2230 JMP report
2231 RTS
2232 .over
2233 CLC
2234 LDA current
2235 ADC #3
2236 STA link
2237 LDA current+1
2238 ADC #0
2239 STA link+1
2240 LDY #4
2241 BNE update4
2242 .not return
2243 CMP #%22
2244 BNE validity_test
2245 .end_quotes
2246 INY
2247 LDA (current),Y
2248 CMP #%22
2249 BEO update3
2250 CMP #13
2251 BNE end guotes
2252 BEQ update4
2253 .validity test
2254 CMP #ASC"&"
2255 BEQ hexadecimal
2256 JSR check_variable
2257 BCC match_names
2258 .hexadecimal
2259 INY
2260 LDA (current),Y
2261 JMP validity_test
2262
2263 .match names
2254 CPY olen
2265 BNE update2
2266 DEY
2267 .next_chr
2268 LDA (current), Y
2269 CMP old_name_store,Y
2270 BNE move_on
2271 DEY
2272 BPL next_chr
2273 BMI insert new
2274 .move on
2275 LDY olen
```

Program 7.1. PROCgrept - a global search and replace facility (cont.).

```
2276 .update2
2277 TYA
2278 BNE update4
2279 .update3
2280 INY
2281 .ucdate4
2282 JSR memory_update
2283 DEY
2284 BNE update4
2285 BEQ main loop
2286 .insert new
2287 INC number
2288 LDA current
2289 STA last
2290 LDA current+1
2291 STA last+1
2292 LDY #0
2293 CLC
2294 LDA result
2295 ADC (link), Y
2296 CMP #238
2297 BCC leap_frog
2298 JMP bad_string
2299 .leap frog
2300 LDX #2
2301 STA (link),Y
2302 LDA result
2303 BEG overwrite
2304 BMI shuffle down
2305 .back
2306 JSR memory update
2307 LDA (last),Y
2308 CMP #%FF
2309 BNE back
2310 LDX #0
2311 LDY result
2312 .shuffle up
2313 LDA (last,X)
2314 STA (last), Y
2315 LDA last
2316 BNE low last
2317 DEC last+1
2318 .low_last
2319 DEC last
2320 LDA last
2321 CMP current
2322 BNE shuffle up
2323 LDA last+1
```

Program 7.1. PROCgrepl - ■ global search and replace facility (cont.).

2367 BCS less_than 2368 CMP #ASC"0" 2369 BCS greater_than 2370 CMP #ASC"%" 2371 BEQ greater than

Program 7.1. PROCgrep! - ■ global search and replace facility (cont.).

```
2372 .less than
2373 CLC
2374 .greater_than
2375 RTS
2376 .print string
2377 STX current
2378 STY current+1
2379 LDY #0
2380 .print string2
2381 LDA (current),Y
2382 BMI no more
2383 JSR %FFE3
2384 INY
2385 BNE print_string2
2386 ind more
2387 RTS
2388 .input string
2389 STX last
2390 STY last+1
2391 .input_loop2
2392 LDY #0
2393 .get_character
2374 JSR &FFEO
2395 CMP #81B
2396 BEG escape
2397 CMP #13
2398 BEQ string_end
2399 CMP #87F
2400 BEQ rub out
2401 JSR check variable
2402 BCC get character
2403 STA (last), Y
2404 JSR &FFE3
2405 .input 100p3
2406 INY
2407 CPY #21
2408 BEQ too big
2409 BNE get character
2410 .string_end
2411 TYA
2412 BEO get_character
2413 JSR &FFE7
2414 TYA
2415 RTS
2416 .rub_cut
2417 DEY
2418 BMI input_loop3
2419 JSR &FFE3
```

Program 7.1. PROCgrept - a global search and replace facility (cont.).

```
2420 JMP get_character
2421 .too big
2422 LDX #error1 MOD 256
2423 LDY #error1 DIV 256
2424 JSR print_string
2425 PLA :PLA :RTS
2426 Lescape
2427 LDA #&7E
2428 JSR %FFF4
2429 PLA : PLA : RTS
2430 .report
2431 LDX #0
2432 SEC
2433 .decimal loop
2434 SBC #10
2435 BMI no jump
2436 INX
2437 JMP decimal_loop
2438 .no_jump
2439 DEX
2440 CLC
2441 ADC #59
2442 PHA
2443 TXA
2444 ADC #48
2445 CMP #ASC"0"
2446 PEG no_print
2447 JSR &FFEE
2448 ind print
2449 PLA
2450 JSR SFFEE
2451 LDX #done MOD 256
2452 LDY #done DIV 25&
245% JMP print string
2454 .bad string
2455 LDX #error2 MSD 256
2456 LDY #error2 DIV 256
2457 JSR print_string
2458 LDX #20
2459 .swap pointers
2460 LDA old name store, X
2461 PHA
2462 LDA new_name store.X
2463 STA old_name_store,X
2464 PLA
2465 STA new_name_store, X
2466 DEX
2467 BPL swap_pointers
```

Program 7.1. PROCgrept - ■ global search and replace facility (cont.).

```
2468 LDA blen
2469 PHA
2470 LDA nlen
2471 STA olen
2472 FLA :PLA :PLA
2473 RTS
2474 .old_name_store
2475 EGUS"
2476 .new_name_store
2477 EGUS"
2478 .old_prompt
2479 EQUB 13
2480 EQUS"Variable : "
2481 EQUB 255
2482 .new prompt
2483 EQUB 13
2484 EQUS"Replace with :"
2485 EQUB 255
2486 .error1
2487 EQUB 13
2488 EQUS"Err1"
2489 EQUW &FF07
2490 .error2
2491 EQUB 13
2492 EQUS"Err2"
2493 EQUW &FF07
2494 .done
2495 EQUS" occurrence(s) replaced"
2496 EQUW &FFOD
2497 .number EQUB 0
2498 1 : NEXT pass
2499 ENDPROC
```

Program 7.1 PROCgrept - a global search and replace facility (cont.).

Lines 2233 to 2241: Otherwise move on past new line header bytes and force branch to 'update4'.

Lines 2243 to 2244: Test for quotes and branch if not there.

Lines 2245 to 2249: Locate the end pair of quotes.

Lines 2250 to 2252: If ASCII return found first, branch to 'update4'.

Lines 2254 to 2255: If a hexadecimal value is indicated, branch.

Lines 2256 to 2261: Check for a valid variable character.

Lines 2263 to 2272: Compare old variable name with the string pointed to in the program by 'current'. Exit on first unlike character. Line 2273: If negative strings compared force a branch to 'insert_new'.

Lines 2274 to 2285: String not found so update all pointers and redo from 'main_loop'.

Lines 2286 to 2291: Increment occurrence pointer and update pointers.

Lines 2292 to 2298: Add new line length to the 'link' byte. If link byte is greater than permissible value then perform 'bad_string' error. Else go to 'leap_frog'.

Lines 2299 to 2304: Calculate if space occupied by variable needs to be altered, if so, move distal portion of program up or down memory as required.

Lines 2305 to 2325: Open up the program at the variable name to make way for a longer variable name.

Lines 2326 to 2334: Write new variable name over the old variable name.

Lines 2335 to 2346: Close up variable space by desired amount to ensure that new shorter variable name fits correctly, then overwrite it. Lines 2347 to 2352: Update current position in program vector.

Lines 2353 to 2375: Check that 'current' contents being investigated is a legal variable value.

Lines 2376 to 2387: Print the ASCII character string pointed to by the address held in the Index registers. Printing is terminated on encountering a negative byte, typically &FF.

Lines 2388 to 2415: Input an ASCII character string up to 20 characters long and store it in the buffer pointed to by the index registers.

Lines 2416 to 2420: Perform DELETE.

Lines 2421 to 2425: Execute 'Too big' error.

Lines 2426 to 2429: Handle ESCAPE.

Lines 2430 to 2453: Print number of occurrences after first converting it into an ASCII-based decimal number.

Lines 2454 to 2457: Print bad string error message.

Lines 2458 to 2473: Reset pointers to former values and exit to BASIC.

Lines 2474 to 2497: ASCII string storage area.

Using GREPL

Because of its large size, a hole must be created within the Beeb's memory map to insert GREPL, because the normal page size areas are not big enough. The program makes a niche by lowering

HIMEM by three pages and placing it above the new value, programming function key 0 with the correct call address.

To use GREPL press f0 and answer to the prompts as they appear. The new variable name may be up to 20 characters long; variables greater than this are not accepted. Once the replace name is entered the program goes about its business and the number of occurrences/replacements are indicated on completion.

Program fact sheet

Program 7.1

Procedure title : PROCgrepl

Variables required : current, last, link, olen, nlen,

result, himem

Line numbers : 2190 to 2499 Length : 582 bytes Zero page requirements : 9 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Eight Time for Bed

Next to Saturday night's Match of the Day, the home computer must be the most frequent centrepiece of the friendly matrimonial dispute. Even four years on, my wife will often appear in the early hours of the morning to 'pull the plug out' of my latest sojourn into the land of ROM and RAM. It is certain that most hobbyists world-wide have suffered their mate's wrath in the small hours of the night at some time. It is difficult to explain to the non-committed that, once in front of the keyboard, time is meaningless.

This program was born at the specific request of my wife. It's a background clock that sits ticking its digits away at the top right-hand corner of the screen while the Beeb goes about its more important tasks, stopping once every second to create the tick or tock to push the second-hand a fraction further into the night!

The clock is based on the use of events or, more correctly, the redirection of events. The BBC Micro is built up around events, so much so that all the time it is switched on and being used it actually stops what it is doing every ten milliseconds to catch up on any outstanding house-keeping chores it needs to be. These chores take many guises and range from reading any pressed keys into the keyboard buffer to sampling some of the ADC channels. Due to the design of the BBC Micro it is possible to intercept these events as they take place and interpret them as we wish, and this concept forms the basis of the digital clock display.

There are several ways in which an event can be made to occur and these are listed in Figure 8.1. The one that we are particularly interested in is event 5 which occurs when the interval timer crosses zero. The interval timer is a 5-byte clock that is incremented one hundred times every second. When the timer is incremented so that it resets to zero, i.e. goes from &FFFFFFFFF to &0, the event is initiated. When the event occurs, the operating system is directed through the event vector, EVNTV at &220, so that by redirecting this

Event	Cause
0	Output buffer empty
1	Input buffer full
2	Character for input buffer entering
3	ADC conversion finished
4	Vertical sync start
5	Interval timer crossing zero
6	ESCAPE detected
7	RS 423 error
8	Econet event detected
9	User event detected

Fig. 8.1 Details of operating system events.

vector to our own event handler the appropriate action can be taken.

The basic component in our clock is, of course, the second, so the interval timer must be made to time-out every second. Being an upcounting device, the interval timer must be loaded with =100 centiseconds. This write interval timer operation is performed using an OSWORD 4 call. As with all OSWORD calls the index registers hold the address of the parameter block which contains the 5-byte value to be written. In Program 8.1, the parameter block is located at 'clock' lines 2606 to 2608.

```
REM *** Continuous display clock
東京北
       REM *** redirects EVENTV vector
   20
222
   30
       *FX13.5
   40
       CLS
   50
       PRINTCHR$141:" - The Mute Clock!"
   60
       PRINTCHR$141;"
                         The Mute Clock!"
   70
       INPUT "Hour
                       : "HZ
   80
      INFUT"Minute
                      ± "MX
   90
       INPUT"Seconds : "S%
  100
       PROCtime (H%, M%, S%, &A00)
  110
       PRINT'
  120
       PRINT"You have set the time for:"
3
  130
               "; H%; ": "; M%: ": "; S%" ?
```

Program 8.1. PROCtime - a background digital clock.

```
PRINT"Press key to start clock"
  140
  150 key=6ET
  160 CALL &A00
  170 END
  180
      Ξ
 2500 DEF PROCtime(gethrs, getmins, getse
cs,addr)
 2501 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
2502 P%=addr
 2503 LOPT pass
                   JMP setup
2504
2505 .tick_tock
                   PHP
2504
2507
                   PHA
 2508
                   FHA
2509
                   TYA
2510
                   PHA
2511
                   LDA#4
2512
                   LDY#clock DIV 256
 2513
                   LDX#clock MOD 256
                   JSR &FFF1
2514
 2515
                   INC seconds
2516
                   LDA seconds
2517
                   CMP#60
2518
                   BNE over
 2519
                   LDA#O
                   STA seconds
 2520
                   INC minutes
 2521
                   LDA minutes
 2522
 2523
                   CMP#60
 2524
                   BNE over
 2525
                   LDA#0
                   STA minutes
 2526
 2527
                   INC hours
 2528
                   LDA hours
                   CMP#24
 2529
2530
                   BNE over
                   LDA#0
 2531
                   STA hours
2532
 2533
       .over
                   LDA hours
 2534
2535
                   LDY#72
                   JSR display
 2536
                   LDA#ASC": "
2537
 2538
                   STA HIMEM, Y
2539
                   INY
 2540
                   LDA minutes
 2541
                    JSR display
```

Program 8.1. PROCtime - a background digital clock/cont.).

```
LDA#ASC":"
2542
2543
                   STA HIMEM, Y
2544
                   INY
2545
                   LDA seconds
2546
                   JSR display
                   PLA
2547
                   TAY
2548
2549
                   PLA
                   TAX
2550
2551
                   FLA
2552
                   PLP
2553
                   RTS
2554
      .display
2555
                   LDX#0
2556
                   SEC
2557
      .loop
                   SBC#10
2558
2559
                   BMI no_jump
2560
                   INX
2541
                   JMP loop
2562
     .nc_jump
2563
                   DEX
2564
                   CLC
                   ADC#58
2545
2566
                   PHA
                   TXA
2567
2568
                   ADC#48
                   STA HIMEM, Y
2569
2570
                   INY
2571
                   PLA
                   STA HIMEM, Y
2572
2573
                   INY
2574
                   RT5
2575
2576
     .setup
2577
                   LDA #gethrs
2578
                   LDX #getmins
2579
                   LDY #getsecs
2580
                   STA hours
                   STX minutes
2581
2582
                   STY seconds
2583
                    LDA#22
                   JSR &FFEE
2584
2585
                   LDA#7
2586
                   JSR &FFEE
2587
                   LDA#2B
2588
                   JSR &FFEE
2589
                   LDA#0
```

Program 8.1. PROCtime - a background digital clock (cont.).

```
2590
                   JSR &FFEE
2591
                   LDA#24
2592
                   JSR &FFEE
2593
                   LDA#39
2594
                   JSR &FFEE
2595
                  LDA#2
2576
                   JSR &FFEE
2597
                  LDA#tick_tock MOD 256
2578
                   STA%220
2599
                  LDA#tick_tock DIV 256
2600
                   STA &221
2601
                   JSR tick_tock
2602
                  LDA#14
2603
                  LDX#5
2604
                   JSR &FFF4
2605
                  RTS
2606
     .clock
2607 EQUD &FFFFFF90
2608 EQUB &FF
2609 .hours EQUB 0
2610 .minutes EQUB 0
2611
     .seconds EQUB 0
2612 3
2613
     NEXT
2614 ENDPROD
```

Program 8.1. PROCtime - a background digital clock (cont.).

The initial program call to 'setup' (line 2504) does a number of things. First, it loads the hours, minutes and seconds values previously input into their respective counters (lines 2577 to 2582). A MODE 7 screen is then selected and a text window defined to ensure that the digital clock cannot be scrolled off the screen. Lines 2597 to 2600 reset the EVNTV vector to point to the 'tick_tock' routine at line 2505. The final lines (lines 2602 and 2603) perform an *FX14.5 which balances the previous *FX13.5 (line 30). These two calls disable and enable the interval timer crossing zero event.

The rest of the program's operation is straightforward. Each time the event occurs 'tick_tock' is entered and the interval timer reset to count a further second (lines 2511 to 2514). Note that on entry to the routine all processor registers are preserved. This is very important, otherwise the processor would probably crash when it returned to take up the task it was undertaking before the event occurred.

Lines 2515 to 2532 simply update the seconds, minutes and hours counters as required. The code between lines 2534 to 2546 stores the latest clock value at the top left-hand corner of the screen. The display subroutine (line 2554) called by the program performs a

simple hex to decimal ASCII conversion by continually subtracting 10 from the value to be displayed.

Finally, the processor registers are restored (lines 2547 to 2552) before control is transferred back to the interrupted program.

Program fact sheet

Program 8.1

Procedure title : PROCtime

Variables required : gethrs, getmins, getsecs, addr

Line numbers : 2500 to 2614

Zero page requirements: none Registers changed : none

Chapter Nine

Error, Pack and Autorun

Error Lister (Program 9.1)

This utility can be of great help at the initial run-time debugging stage of a program. Normally, if an error occurs, one of the Beeb's terse error messages is issued and you are left to list the line referenced often scratching your head wondering just where the problem is. The most infuriating part of debugging is when you make what amounts to a fundamental mistake to which you remain blind, no matter how many times you run and list the erroneous line. I speak from frequent experience!

One way around the error problem is to incorporate an error handling procedure in your program, starting the program off with a line such as:

10 ON ERROR GOTO 5000

At line 5000, the error message and line can be printed out. The problem still remains that the erroneous line is not listed, nor is the source of the error listed.

Program 9.1 solves both these problems. After being set up and installed, errors occurring at run-time will be treated in the normal manner except that the line containing the error will be listed starting at the point of the error, thus highlighting the mistake. For example, the program line

10 PRINT"HELLO": STUPID ERROR: VDU 7

would normally result in the error:

Mistake at line 10

at run-time. With the new error lister inserted, the response would be

STUPID ERROR: VDU 7

Mistake at line 10

```
10 REM *** ERROR LISTER ***
  20 PROCerror (&COO)
  30 *KEYO CALL &COO!M
  40 *KEY1 CALL &C24!M
 50 END
  60 r
2620 DEF PROCerror (addr)
2621 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
2622 brkv=?&202+(?&203$256)
2623 P%=addr
2624 E
              OPT pass
2625
2626 .SETUP
               LDX #0
2627
2628 .next_chr
2629
               LDA message. X
              JSR &FFE3
2630
              INX
2631
              CMP #13
2632
              BNE next_chr
2633
2634
              LDA &202
              STA address
2635
              LDA %203
2636
              STA address+1
2637
              LDA #entry MOD 256
2438
              STA &202
2639
              LDA #entry DIV 256
2640
2641
              STA &203
2642
              RTS
2643 .restore
2644
               LDX #0
2645 .mext_chr
              LDA message2, X
2646
2647
               JSR %FFE3
2648
               INX
              CMP#13
2649
              BNE next_chr
2650
              LDA address
2651
              STA &202
2652
2653
              LDA address+1
2654
              STA &203
               RTS
2655
2656 .entry
               BIT &FF
2657
              BMI was_esc
2658
2659
               CLC
              LDA &1B
2660
               ADC &39
2661
```

Program 9.1. PROCerror - lists the program line in which an error occurred.

```
TAX
2662
2663
               LDY #0
              JSR &FFE7
2664
2665 .next_error
              LDA (&17),Y
2666
              CMP #13
2667
2668
              BEO was esc
              CMP #32
2669
              PCC garbage
2670
              CMP #880
2671
              BCS garbage
2672
              JSR &FFEE
2673
2674 _garbage
2675
               INY
2676
               DEX
              BNE next_error
2677
2678 .was_esc
              JMP brkv
2679
2480 .message
               EQUS" Error Lister On!"
2681
              EQUB 7
2482
              EQUE 13
2483
2684 .message2
              EOUS" Error Lister Off!"
2485
2686
               EQUE 7
2687
              EQUB 13
2688 .address
              EQUS" "
2689
2690 ]
2691 NEXT
2692 ENDPROC
```

Program 9.1. PROCerror – lists the program fine in which an error occurred (cont.).

The section of line which created the mistake has been listed in addition to the normal error message.

The assembled program occupies just 141 bytes and is completely self-contained so that it can be tucked out of the way during debugging. As with other programs of this type in the Portfolio, there are two entry points — to switch the lister on (entry at line 2626) and off (entry at line 2643). The 'setup' section of code saves the normal contents of BRKV at &202 and revectors it to point to 'entry' at line 2656.

When the interpreter causes the program to abort via BRKV the new wedge coding is executed. It begins first at line 2657 by testing bit 7 of location &FF. If this bit is set then the abortion was due to the ESCAPE key being pressed and so the normal 'brky' is jumped to.

Assuming that ESC was not pressed, the length of the current expression being evaluated by the interpreter, and the one that caused the error to occur, is calculated. The bytes at & I B and & 39 are summed (lines 2659 to 2662) and the result moved into the X register. Location & IB contains the current offset for the expression evaluation pointer while & 39 contains the actual length of the expression.

The address of the current expression is held in the vector at & 19 which is known as the expression evaluation base pointer, and each byte is in turn accessed and printed to the screen (line 2666). If a carriage return is encountered, the end of the line has been reached and the program jumps to the normal 'brkv' for the printing of the error message (lines 2667 and 2668). The comparisons of lines 2669 and 2671 ensure that no garbage gets printed to the screen, should the program crash have caused any to have been poked into the program inadvertently.

A compact Pack (Program 9.2)

'Pack' is basically a simple program compacter that, when called, removes all traces of spaces and REM statements from it, leaving behind just the minimal program. There are two advantages in doing this. First, the program becomes smaller, and in the case of some programs much smaller. Second, by virtue of being smaller, they run and execute much faster; even a single space slows a program down a fraction, so a hundred spaces will slow a program down that much more! The saving in memory can make the difference between a program running in a high resolution mode and the dreaded 'Bad Mode' message being reported.

Pack searches through a program in the current text space and looks for spaces and REM statements and the messages that follow them. Of course, the program doesn't wipe the spaces and REMs out; rather, it just shifts the top end of the program down a byte or bytes to write over the offending space or REM.

Program 9.2 begins by placing the current value of PAGE into two zero page vectors (lines 2705 to 2710). These are used to keep position in the current program and point to the same, packed position, in the new program. A special byte is also cleared; this is the 'rem_flag' and is used to indicate if a REM statement is currently being processed.

The heavy work of the program is performed by the subroutine, 'transfer' at lines 2784 to 2789. This moves a byte from its current

```
10 REM *** SPACE & REM REMOVER ***
  20 PROCpack (&70,&72,&000)
  30 END
  40 :
2700 DEF PROCpack (current, new_position
.addr)
2701 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
2702 P%=addr
2703 f
                OPT pass
2704
                LDA #0
2705
                STA new_position
2706
2707
               STA current
2708
                LDA 219
2709
               STA new_position+1
 2710
               STA current+1
2711 .outer
               LDA #0
 2712
2713
               STA rem_flag
               LDY #1
2714
                JSR transfer
 2715
               CMP #&FF
2716
 2717
               BEC all done
               JSR transfer
2718
               JSR transfer
 2719
 2720 .inner
               LDA (current).Y
 2721
               BIT rem flag
 2722
                BPL flag_clear
 2723
 2724
                CMP #13
                BNE space
 2725
 2726
                JSR transfer
 2727
                BED end of line
 2728 .flag_clear
                CMP #ASC" "
 2729
                BEQ space
 2730
                CMP #&F4
 2731
                BNE not rem
 2732
 2733
                DEY
                LDA #&FF
 2734
                STA rem flag
 2735
                BNE space
 2736
 2737 .not_rem
                JSR transfer
 2738
                BEO end_of_line
 2739
                CMP #&22
 2740
                BEO inside_quote
 2741
                BNE inner
 2742
```

Program 9.2. PROCpack - a space and REM remover.

```
2743 .space
                INC current
2744
                BNE inner
2745
                INC current+1
2746
2747
                BNE inner
2748 .end_of_line
2749
                DEY
                TYA
2750
                PHA
2751
                CPY #3
2752
                BEG clear
2753
2754
               LDY #3
                STA (new_position),Y
2755
2756
                CLC
                ADC new_position
2757
                STA new position
2758
                BCC clear
2759
                INC new position+1
2760
2761 .clear
                PLA
2762
                CLC
2763
                ADC current
2764
                STA current
2765
                BCC outer
2766
                INC current+1
2767
2768
                BNE outer
2769 .inside_quote
                JSR transfer
2770
                BEO end_of_line
2771
                CMP #&22
2772
                BNE inside_quote
2773
                BEQ inner
2774
2775 .all_done
2776
                LDA new position
                CLC
2777
                ADC #2
2778
                STA &12
2779
                LDA new_position+1
2780
2781
                ADC #0
2782
                STA &13
                RTS
2783
2784 .transfer
2785
                LDA (current), Y
2786
                STA (new_position), Y
2787
                INY
2788
                CMP #13
2789
                RTS
2790 .rem_flag
```

Program 9.2. PROCpack - space and REM remover (cont.).

2791 EQUS " " 2792] 2793 NEXT 2794 ENDPROC

Program 9.2. PROCpack - a space and REM remover (cont.).

position in the program undergoing packing to the final version. Post-indexed addressing is used throughout. After the subroutine call, the byte just moved is tested for TOP, by comparing it with &FF (line 2716) in which case the pack is complete. Note that at the start of each line an extra two transfers are required to move the line number down (lines 2718 and 2719).

The space and REM tests are performed in lines 2729 and 2731 respectively and the corresponding branch made accordingly. If a space is detected, the 'current' vector is incremented, no change is made to the 'new_position' vector and the space is not transferred. Thus, effectively the space gets lost as illustrated in Figure 9.1.

The REM test looks for the token for REM which is &F4. If the token is found &FF is placed in the 'rem_flag' to indicate this - so that the program knows it is within a REM statement and is, in fact, 'deleting' items from the line rather than transferring them. A branch

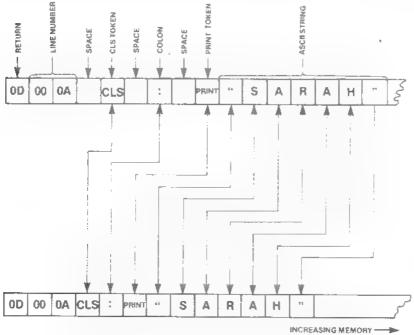


Fig. 9.1. Overwriting bytes to compact a program.

to 'space' (line 2736) increments the 'current' vector before a branch to 'inner' is forced.

The relevant instruction here is in line 2722, where the 'rem_flag' is tested with BIT. If the flag is clear, the following branch is executed, otherwise the 'current' vector is incremented via 'space'. This entire process continues until the end of line return character is encountered (line 2724). The 'end_of_line' routine (line 2748) rapidly transfers the three-byte line header, as comparing this would be an utter waste of processor time.

Occasionally, spaces are required by programs. The most obvious occasion is within ASCII strings where they are used for formatting text. The 'inside_quote' coding ensures that any spaces occurring within the boundary of quotes are not removed. This section is entered via line 2741.

Autorun (Program 9.3)

This program is interesting in that once run you cannot stop it from automatically running the program at PAGE. No matter what combination of keys you try, be it ESCAPE, BREAK or even CTRL-BREAK the program runs! In fact, the only way to be rid of it is to turn off the power to the Beeb, so this makes it an easy way to protect your own programs from the hackers.

```
>LIST
    O REM!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
11111111111111111111111
   10 PROCautorun
   20 END
  30 :
2800 DEF PROCautorum
2801 #FX247,76
2802 *FX248,6
2803 A%=249
2804 Y%=0
2805 XX=PAGE DIV 256
2806 CALL %FFF4
2807 P%=PAGE+6
2808 I
2809
                LDA #138
2810
                LDX #0
2811
                LDY #ASC("0")
```

Program 9.3. PROCautorun - will automatically run a program no matter what!

```
JSR &FFF4
2812
                LDY #ASC("L")
2813
                JSR &FFF4
2814
2815
                LDY #ASC("D")
2816
                JSR %FFF4
2817
                LDY #14
2818
                DEY
                JSR &FFF4
2819
                LDY #ASC("R")
2820
2821
                JSR &FFF4
2822
                LDY #ASC("U")
                JSR &FFF4
2823
2824
                LDY #ASC ("N")
2825
                JSR &FFF4
2826
                LDY #14
                DEY
2827
2828
                JSR &FFF4
2829
                RTS
2830 1
2831 ENDPROC
```

Program 9.3, PROCautorun - will automatically run a program no matter what! (cont.).

The assembler is quite straightforward; an *FX 138 call is used to place the string "OLD<RETURN> RUN<RETURN>" into the keyboard buffer. It is not possible, however, to use this call to poke a return character, ASCII 13, into the buffer. To get round this, the Y register is loaded with 14 and then decremented (lines 2817 and 2826).

The machine code is assembled in a rather strange place - in fact, it overwrites the 50 exclamation marks after the REM statement in line 0. As you can see, P% is set to PAGE+6 in line 2807. If you run the program then list it you will see that the !s are replaced by gobbledygook; this is just the interpreter trying to de-tokenise the machine code. These will have no effect when the program is run as they are away from the program, hiding behind the REM statement.

The magic part of the program comes in lines 2801 to 2806. Here the BREAK intercept codes controlled by *FX247, *FX248 and *FX249 are rewritten to point the BRK handler to the code now stored at PAGE+6, so whenever any sort of BREAK is performed the interpreter comes here and OLDs and re-RUNs the program.

Once the program has been run, only line 0 need remain; the others can be deleted as required.

Program fact sheets

Program 9.1

Procedure title : PROCerror

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 2620 to 2692 : 141 bytes Length Zero page requirements : none Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 9.2

Procedure title : PROCpack

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 2700 to 2794 Length : 149 bytes Zero page requirements : 4 bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 9.3

Procedure title
Variables required : addr
Line numbers : 2800 to 2831
: 53 bytes (inside program) Registers changed : A. X. Y

Chapter Ten The Necessary Evil

Machine code programs of any length will often be required to manipulate numbers. Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division are all necessary evils in the computer world of data and figure manipulation. This chapter presents routines that should be versatile enough to cover most applications though often, by definition, they will be wasteful of memory and processor time. For example, rather than providing a procedure that will handle the multiplication of two eight-bit numbers a multi-byte multiplication procedure is provided. There is no reason, however, why you—the programmer - could not add a single-byte procedure to this Portfolio.

The programs provided in this chapter are as follows:

Program 10.1: Multi-byte addition.
Program 10.2: Multi-byte subtraction.
Program 10.3: Multi-byte multiplication.
Program 10.4: Multi-byte division.
Program 10.5: Single-byte square root.

Program 10.6: Double-byte square root.
Program 10.7: Double-byte ASL.
Program 10.8: Double-byte LSR.
Program 10.9: Double-byte ROR.
Program 10.10: Double-byte ROL.
Program 10.11: Multi-byte ASL.

Multi-byte Addition (Program 10.1)

Program 10.1 uses the post-indexed indirect address capabilities of the Beeb's 6502 to sum two sets of bytes stored anywhere in the Beeb's memory map, depositing the result over the first number. The start address of the two number sets is stored in the vectors 'first' and

```
10 REM *** MULTI-BYTE ADDITION ***
   20 PROCmulti add(&70,&71,&73,&000)
   30 0%=0
   40 7870=4
   50 !871=84000
   60 !&73=&4100
   70 !&4000=123456
   80 ! &4100=123455
   90 PRINT 222 "123456+123456=":
  100 CALL mbadd
  110 PRINT! &4000
  120 END
  130 :
 5000 DEF PROCmulti_add(count,first,seco
nd, addr)
 5001 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 5002 P%=addr
 5003 [
                OPT PASS
 5004
 5005 .mbadd
 5006
                LDX count
                LDY #0
 5007
 5008
                ELE
 5009 .next_byte
                LDA (first), Y
 5010
 5011
                ADC (second), Y
 5012
                STA (first).Y
 5013
                INY
 5014
                DEX
 5015
                BNE next_byte
 5014
                RTS
 5017 1
 5018 NEXT
 5019 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.1. PROC multi_add - adds two multi-byte numbers together.

'second'. These variables must therefore be assigned addresses in zero page. A further variable, count, is required and this should contain the number of bytes to be summed which is transferred into the X register to act as the bytes to add counter.

The program is simply an addition routine controlled by a loop counter. After seeding the index registers (lines 5005 to 5008) the carry flag is initially cleared. The 'first' byte is sourced and added to the 'second' byte with the result being stored at 'first' (lines 5009 to 5012). The index registers are adjusted and the loop reiterated until X becomes zero (lines 5013 to 5015).

Since the index registers are only capable of holding a maximum

value of 255 the number of bytes to add together is limited to this value.

Multi-byte Subtraction (Program 10.2)

Program 10.2 operates identically to the last one. The only difference is that the SBC and the SEC instructions are substituted for their addition counterparts. It is important to remember that the 'second' value is subtracted from the 'first'.

```
10 REM $## MULTI-BYTE SUBTRACTION ###
   20 PRODmulti sub(&70, 271, 273, 2000)
   30 9%=0
   40 7870=4
   50 1371=84000
   60 ! %73=%4100
   70 ! 84000=123456
   80 !84100=3456
   90 PRINT "123456-3456=":
  100 CALL mbsub
  110 PRINT! &4000
 120 END
  130 :
5030 DEF PROCoulti_sub(count.first.seco
nd, addr)
5031 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
5032 P%=addr
5033 I
5034
                OPT cass
5035 .mbsub
                LDX count
5036
                LDY #0
5037
                SEC
5038
5039 .next_byte
5040
                LDA (first), Y
5041
                SBC (second), Y
                STA (first), Y
5042
5043
                INY
                DEX
5044
5045
               BNE next_byte
5046
               RTS
5047 1
5048 NEXT
5049 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.2. PROCmulti_sub - subtracts one multi-byte number from another.

Multi-byte Multiplication (Program 10.3)

Program 10.3 takes two multi-byte numbers (unsigned) stored low byte first, multiplies the 'first' by the 'second' and stores the result over the 'first'. In addition to requiring two vectored addresses, a 256byte work buffer is required by the program. The TOTAL number of bytes to be multiplied together is expected in 'totlen' while the variable 'count' is used as a general loop counter by the program.

The multiplication technique employed is a standard add-and-shift one. If the current bit being tested in the multiplier is a one, the multiplicand is added to the partial product, which is then rotated by one bit. If, on the other hand, the multiplier bit is 0 only the rotate is performed.

Because of the way 'mb_mult' is implemented, only the least significant bytes of the product are returned, i.e. the total number of bytes in the multiplier and multiplicand. The most significant bytes are always available in 'buffer' if required. Therefore, the user should check the 'buffer' for any overflow if it is suspected.

```
10 REM *** MULTI BYTE MULTIPLICATION
東京東
   20 PROCmulti_mult (&70,&72,&74,&75,&4
000, &4200)
   30 !&70=&3000
   40 ! &72=&3100
   50 7874=4
   60 ! & 3000 = 1234
   70 !&3100=1234
   80 CALL mb mult
  90 PRINT"Result of multiplication :":
  100 PRINT! $3000
  110 END
  120 ±
5050 DEF PROEmulti_mult(first, second, to
tlen,count,buffer,addr)
5051 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
5052 P%=addr
5053 E
5054
                OPT pass
5055 .mb_mult
5056
                LDA second
5057
                SEÇ
5058
                SBC #1
5059
                STA second
5060
                LDA second+1
```

Program 10.3. PROCmulti_mult - multiplies two multi-byte numbers.

```
5061
               SBC #0
5062
               STA second+1
5063
               LDA first
5064
               SEC
5045
               SBC #1
               STA first
5066
               LDA first+1
5067
5068
               SBC #0
               STA first+1
5069
               LDA totlen
5070
5071
               BEQ finished
5072
               STA count
               LDA #0
5073
5074
               ASL count
               ROL A
5075
              ASL count
5076
5077
              ROL A
5078
               ASL count
               ROL A
5079
5080
               STA count+1
5081
               INC count
5082
               BNE over
50B3
               INC count+1
5084 .over
               LDX totlen
5085
               LDA #0
5086
5087 .save_loop
5088
               STA buffer-1.X
5089
               DEX
               BNE save_loop
5090
5091
               CLC
5092 .loop
5093
               LDX totlen
5094 .rotate_loop
5095
               ROR buffer-1.X
5096
               DEX
5097
               BNE rotate_loop
5098
               LDY totlen
5099 .rotate_save
5100
               LDA (first), Y
5101
               ROR A
5102
               STA (first).Y
5103
                DEY
5104
               BNE rotate_save
5105
               BCC no add
5106
               LDY #1
5107
               LDX totlen
5108
                CLC
```

Program 10.3. PROCmulti_mult - multiplies two multi-byte numbers (cont.).

```
5109 .add_loop
5110
                LDA (second), Y
5111
                ADC buffer-1,Y
5112
                STA buffer-1.Y
5113
                INY
5114
                DEX
5115
                BNE add_loop
5116 .no_add
5117
                DEC count
5118
                BNE loop
5119
                LDX count+1
5120
                BEQ finished
5121
               DEX
5122
                STX count+1
5123
               JMP loop
5124 .finished
5125
               RTS
5126 ]
5127 NEXT
5128 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.3. PROCmulti_mult - multiplies two multi-byte numbers (cont.).

The program operates as follows:

Lines 5056 to 5062: Subtract 1 from address of 'second'.

Lines 5063 to 5069: Subtract 1 from address of 'first'.

Lines 5070 to 5071: If total length is zero then end.

Lines 5072: Set number of bytes to count,

Lines 5073 to 5079: Multiply count by eight.

Lines 5080 to 5083: Add one to value of count.

Lines 5084 to 5091: Save high product in buffer.

Lines 5092 to 5098: Shift carry bit into buffer and bit 0 of high product into the carry flag.

Lines 5099 to 5104: Rotate carry into most significant bit of 'first' and shift next bit of multiplier into the carry flag.

Line 5105: Carry clear so no addition required.

Lines 5106 to 5115: Carry flag is set so add 'second' and high product together.

Lines 5116 to 5123: Decrement bit count and exit if zero, else repeat for the next bit

The lines of BASIC show how the routine needs to be set up before calling it. In a larger assembler program these introductory peeks and pokes would be performed using assembler and the multiplication routine called as a subroutine from the main program. Lines 30 and 40 place the two addresses of data into the zero page vectors, while lines 60 and 70 place the values to be multiplied (both 1234) into these data buffers. Previously, in line 50, the total number of bytes to be combined, four (1234 can be held in two bytes), is poked into location &74 which corresponds to the variable 'totlen' in the procedure. After calling the subroutine (line 80) the final result is displayed. Check it on a calculator if you wish!

Multi-byte Division (Program 10.4)

Program 10.4 will divide two unsigned multi-byte number using a standard shift and subtract procedure whereby a:1 is placed in the quotient each time subtraction is possible, and a 0 if not. The dividend is located at 'first' and the divisor at 'second'; during the division the quotient overwrites the dividend. Any remainder from the division is placed at the address given by 'hidiv_pointer'.

```
10 REM *** MULTI BYTE DIVISION ***
   20 PRDCmult div(&70,&72,&74,&75,&77.&
79.23000.33100.24000)
   30 !%70=%3400
   40 ! 272=23500
   50 7874=3
   50 !%3400=10000
   70 ! $3500=2
   80 CALL &4000
   90 PRINT "Result is :":
  100 PRINT!&3400
  110 PRINT"Remainder :";
  120 PRINT
  130 END
  140 :
 5150 DEF PROCmult_div(first, second, totl
en, count, hidiv_pointer, pointer, buffer1, b
uffer2, addr)
 5151 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
5152 FX=addr
5153 C
 5154
                OPT pass
5155 .multi_div
                LDA totlen
5156
                BNE begin
5157
5158
                JMP ckay out
5159 .begin
5160
               STA count
                LDA #0
5161
```

Program 10.4.PROCmulti_div - divides one multi-byte number by another.

```
5162
               ASL count
5163
               ROL A
5164
               ASL count
5165
               ROL A
5166
               ASL count
               ROL A
5167
               STA count+1
5168
               INC count
5169
5170
               BNE over
5171
               INC count+1
5172 .cver
5173
               LDX totlen
               LDA #0
5174
5175 .clear
5176
               STA buffer1-1, X
5177
               STA buffer2-1, X
5178
               DEX
               BNE clear
5179
5180
               LDA #buffer1 MOD 256
               STA hidiv_pointer
5191
5182
              LDA #buffer1 DIV 256
5183
               STA hidiv_pointer+1
               LDA #buffer2 MOD 256
5184
5185
               STA pointer
               LDA #buffer2 DIV 256
5186
5187
               STA cointer+1
5198
               LDX totler
               LDY #0
5189
5190
               TYA
5191 .check
5192
               ORA (second), Y
5193
               INY
5194
               DEX
5195
               BNE check
5196
               CMP #0
5197
               BNE divide
5198
               JMP error
5199 .divide
5200
               CLC
5201 .set_loop
5202
               LDX totler
5203
               LDY #0
5204 .loop
5205
               LDA (first), Y
5206
               ROL A
5207
               STA (first), Y
5208
               INY
5209
               DEX
```

Program 10.4.PROCmulti_div - divides one multi-byte number by another (cont.).

```
5210
                BNE loop
5211 .dec_count
5212
                DEC count
5213
                BNE set shift
5214
                LDX count+1
                BEO ckay_out
5215
5216
                DEX
5217
                STX count+1
5218 .set_shift
5219
                LDX totlen
5220
                EDY #0
5221 .shift_loop
5222
                LDA (hidiv_pointer),Y
5223
                ROL A
5224
                STA (hidiv pointer), Y
5225
                INY
5226
                DEX
5227
                BNE shift_loop
5228
                LDY #0
5229
                LDX totlen
5230
                SEC
5231 .subtract
5232
                LDA (hidiv_pointer),Y
5233
                SBC (second).Y
5234
                STA (pointer), Y
5235
                INY
                DEX
5234
5237
               BNE subtract
5238
               BCC set_loop
               LDY hidiv_pointer
5239
5240
               LDX hidiv_pointer+1
5241
               LDA pointer
               STA hidiv_pointer
5242
5243
               LDA pointer+1
5244
                STA hidiv_pointer+1
5245
                STY pointer
5246
                STX pointer+1
5247
                JMP set_loopOFF
5248 .ckay_out
5249
                CLC
5250
               BCC finished
5251 .error
5252
                SEC
5253 .finished
5254
               RTS
5255 1
5256 NEXT
5257 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.4. PROC multi_div - divides one multi-byte number by another (cont.).

The total number of bytes to be referenced in the division is placed in 'totlen' prior to the call. On exit from the routine, the carry flag bit is set if an error occurred during the division - otherwise it returns clear. The program operates as follows:

Lines 5156 to 5158: Get 'totlen' if zero then perform a no error finish. Lines 5160 to 5166; Set count and then multiply by 8 to obtain total number of bits to do.

Lines 5167 to 5171: Add one to bit counter.

Lines 5173 to 5179: Initialise the high dividend result buffer to zero.

Lines 5180 to 5187: Point vectors to buffers.

Lines 5188 to 5198; Check that the divisor, held in 'second' is not zero!

Lines 5199 to 5200; Clear carry flag on entry into 'divide'.

Lines 5201 to 5210: Move the carry flag bit into the low dividend, 'first', to use as the next quotient bit. Then move the most significant bit of the low dividend into the carry flag bit.

Lines 5211 to 5217: Decrement 'count' by one and branch to 'okay_out' if all bits are done.

Lines 5218 to 5227: Transfer the carry flag bit into the least significant bit of the high dividend.

Lines 5228 to 5237: Subtract 'second' from high dividend and save result at 'pointer'.

Lines 5238 to 5246: If the carry flag bit is set then the trial subtraction worked! Therefore, set the quotient bit and switch pointers to replace remainder and dividend. If the carry flag is clear, the trial subtraction failed: therefore skip swap over and branch direct as next quotient bit is zero.

Line 5247: Do next bit.

Lines 5248 to 5250: Finished with no errors detected.

Lines 5251 to 5254: Finished with an error present.

Once again, the first few programs lines show how the procedure can be set up, using BASIC. The procedure is assembled passing workspace, vectors and buffer locations as parameters (line 20). The two vectors at 'first' and 'second' are poked with buffer addresses (lines 30 and 40), which are subsequently seeded with the dividend and divisor (lines 60 and 70). The dividend is 10000 and the divisor 2. which require total of three bytes' storage, as indicated in line 50 which pokes the byte count into 'totlen'.

After calling the routine the result is extracted from the buffer at &3400 and the remainder from the buffer at &3000.

The odd square root

Finding the square root of a number in machine code might at first sight seem rather difficult. However, there is a quite straightforward solution. The method is simply this: 'the square root of an integer number is equal to the total number of successively higher odd integer numbers that can be subtracted from it'. Consider the number 36: first we subtract one from it, then three, then five and so on until we have no remainder. The total number of odd numbers subtracted is its square root! Thus,

```
36-1=35 : partial root = 1
35-3=32 : partial root = 2
32-5=27: partial root = 3
27 - 7 = 20 : partial root = 4
20-9=11: partial root = 5
11-11=0 : final square root = 6
```

If the final partial root does not yield a result of 0 then a remainder is available which can be 'floated' to provide the decimal portion of the root.

Program 10.5 provides a suitable assembler-based procedure to calculate the square root of any single byte number located at 'byte'. The Y register is used to keep a count of the partial root which is incremented each time round the 'loop'. The location at 'byte+1' is used to hold the odd number to be subtracted. The final root is deposited in 'byte' and any remainder at 'byte+1'.

```
10 REM ***SINGLE BYTE SQUARE RODT***
  20 PROComebyte square(&70,&C00)
  30 7870=170
  40 CALL square
  50 PRINT"Square root =":7%70
  60 PRINT"remainder =":?&71
  70 END
  B0 m
5270 DEF PROConebyte_square(byte,addr)
5271 FOR bass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
5272 P%=addr
5273 E
5274
               OPT pass
5275 .square
5276
               LDY #0
5277
               LDA #1
```

Program 10.5, PROConebyte_square - calculates the square root of a singlebyte number.

```
5278
                STA byte+1
5279
                LDA byte
5280 .loop
5281
                CMP byte+1
5282
                BCC finished
5283
                SBC byte+1
5284
                INY
5285
                INC byte+1
5286
                INC byte+1
5287
                JMP loop
5298 .finished
5289
                STY byte
5290
                STA byte+1
5291
5292 ]
5293 NEXT
5294 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.5. PROConebyte_square - calculates the square root of a singlebyte number (cont.).

Program 10.5 is simple but effective. On entry to 'square' (line 5275) the Y register is initialised ready to take the partial root count; the accumulator is loaded with the first odd number to be subtracted which is then written to the location 'byte+1' (lines 5276 to 5279). The subtract and count loop is embodied in lines 5280 to 5287. Line 5281 begins by comparing the contents from byte (the current remainder) with the next odd number, a clear carry flag denotes that the remainder is less than the next odd number and the program branches to 'finish'. A set carry and line 5283 subtracts the current odd number from the current remainder (line 5283) and the Y register is incremented. Before the loop is redone the two is added to the contents of 'byte+1' to move onto the next odd number (lines 5285) and 5286). Note that the program passes the immediate value through to the procedure for splitting into two bytes and storing in 'block' before the shift is performed. If the value is already held in 'block' then 'do-asl' can be called directly.

Program 10.6 is a double-byte version, Program 10.5 finding the square root of an unsigned 16-bit integer value. The two locations at 'byte' hold the integer value while 'temp' counts the double-byte odd number. The program operates virtually the same as its predecessor; but because a two-byte value is involved a subtraction rather than a compare must be performed initially. To ensure that the final subtraction will not erode any remainder, its possible low order byte is preserved in the X register.

Looking further down the program listing (line 5322) it seems at

```
10 REM *** TWO BYTE SQUARE ROOT ***
  20 PROCtwobyte_square(&70, &72, &COO)
  30 !&70=1234
  40 CALL two_square
  50 PRINT"Result =: ": 7&70
  60 PRINT"Remainder =: "; ?%71
  70 END
  80 :
5300 DEF PROCtwobyte_square(byte,temp,a
5301 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
5302 P%=addr
5303 E
5304
               OPT pass
5305 .two_square
5304
              LDY #1
5307
               STY temp
5308
               DEY
5309
               STY temp+1
5310 .loop
5311
               SEC
5312
               LDA byte
5313
               TAX
5314
              SBC temp
5315
              STA byte
5316
             LDA byte+1
5317
              SBC temp+1
5318
              STA byte+1
5319
              BCC finished
5320
              INY
5321
              LDA temp
5322
              ADC #1
5323
              STA temp
              BCC Loop
5324
5325
               INC temp+1
5326 .finished
5327
               STY byte
5328
               STX byte+1
5329
              RTS
5330 )
5331 NEXT
5332 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.6. PROCtwobyte _ square = calculates the square root of ■ 16-bit value.

first sight that the odd number counter is only being incremented by one. However, two is actually being added as the carry flag will be set at this point, if it is clear where the branch to 'finish' at line 5319 would have been performed.

By the left!

The final five programs in this chapter deal with double-byte shifts and rotates. It may seem at first that these would be straightforward enough, but this is certainly not the case with the ASL and LSR combinations, as both of these introduce a 0 into bit 0 and bit 7 of the byte they are acting on respectively. Thus, a two-byte ASL will not 1 vield the correct result if the sequence

```
ASL byte
ASL byte+1
```

is used.

To perform an overall ASL on two bytes, the initial ASL must be followed by a ROL. Program 10.7 illustrates the technique while Figure 10.1 shows what is happening. The ASL of line 5359 moves bit 7 of 'block+1' (the low byte in true 6502 back-to-frontness!) into the carry inserting a 0 into bit 0. Line 5360 then performs a ROL which moves bit 7 in the carry into bit 0 of 'block', shuffling the internal bits up one bit. The last bit, bit 7, falls out into the carry. The two-byte value has also been multiplied by two!

```
10 REM*** DOUBLE BYTE ASL ***
  20 PROCtwo_byte_asl(1,&70,&000)
  30 CALLset as!
  40 FOR loop=1 TO 15
  50 PRINT?&70*256+?&71
  60 CALLdo_asl
  70 NEXT loop
  80 END
  90 :
5350 DEF PROCtwo_byte_as1(num,block,add
5351 P% = addr
5352 (
5353 .set_asl
5354
                   LDA #num DIV 256
5355
                   STA block
5354
                   LDA #num MOD 256
5357
                   STA block+1
5358 .do asl
5359
                   ASL block+1
5360
                   ROL block
5361
                   RTS
5362 1
5363 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.7. PROCtwo_byte_asl - arithmetical shift left on a 16-bit value.

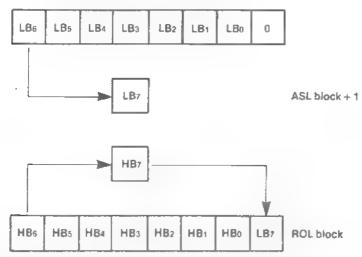


Fig. 10.1. Implementing a 16-bit shift register using an ASL/ROL combination

Program 10.8 works in the opposite direction performing an overall LSR using an LSR and ROR in conjunction. As the shift works in the opposite direction the bytes are referenced in the

```
10 REM*** DOUBLE BYTE LSR ***
   20 PROCtwo_byte_1sr(45535, %70, %800)
   30 CALLset_1sr
   40 FOR loop=1 TO 15
   50 PRINTT&70*256+7871
   60 CALLdo_1sr
   70 NEXT loop
   BO END
   90 :
5370 DEF FROCtwo_byte isr(num,block,add
r)
5371 F%=addr
5372 C
5373 .set lsr
5374
                    LDA #num DIV 256
5375
                    STA block
5376
                   LDA #num MOD 256
5377
                    STA block+1
5378 .do_1sr
5379
                   LSR block
5380
                   ROR block+1
5381
                   RTS
5382 1
5383 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.8. PROCtwo_byte_lsr - logical shift right on a 16-bit value.

opposite order to an ASL. The shift is performed on the low byte in 'block' and the rotate on the high byte in 'block+1'. The total effect is to halve the two-byte number.

Programs 10.9 and 10.10 perform double-byte RORs and ROLs respectively. The only difference to note here is the order in which the bytes in 'block' are rotated. In RORing a two-byte number, the low byte is rotated first. With a ROL it is the high byte that is manipulated first.

```
10 REM### DOUBLE BYTE ROR ###
   20 PRDCtwo_byte_ror(32768,&70,&000)
   30 CALLset ron
   40 FOR loop=1 TO 15
   50 PRINT?&70#256+?&71
   60 CALLdo ror
   70 NEXT loop
   80 END
   90 :
 5390 DEF PROCtwo_byte_ror(num,block,add
r)
 5391 P%=addr
 5392 [
 5393 .set_ror
 5394
                   LDA #num DIV 256
 5395
                    STA block
5396
                   LDA #num MOD 256
 5397
                   STA block+1
 5398 .do_rer
 5399
                   ROR block
5400
                   ROR block+1
5401
                   RTS
5402 1
5403 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.9. PROCtwo_byte_ror - ■ double-byte rotate right.

```
10 REM### DOUBLE BYTE ROL ###
   20 PROCtwo_byte_rol(1,&70,&COO)
   30 CALLset_rol
   40 FOR loop=1 TO 15
   50 PRINT?&70#256+?&71
   60 CALLda rol
   70 NEXT 1000
   80 END
   90 :
5410 DEF PROCtwo_byte_rol(num,block,add
r)
5411 P%=addr
```

Program 10.10. PROCtwo_byte_rol - a double-byte rotate left.

```
5412 €
5413 .set rol
5414
                   LDA #num DIV 256
5415
                   STA block
5416
                   LDA #num MOD 256
5417
                   STA black+1
5418 .do_rol
5419
                   ROL block+1
5420
                   ROL block
5421
                   RT5
5422 1
5423 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.10. PROCtwo_byte_rol - a double-byte rotate left (cont.).

Finally, Program 10.11 shows how a multi-byte shift, left in this instance, can be implemented on an unsigned value between 2 and 255 bytes in length. The start of the bytes to be shifted are located in 'start' while the number of them is found in 'bytes'. The program commences by placing the 'bytes' count into the Y register and

```
10 REM ### MULTI LEFT SHIFT
   20 REM *** GIVES 3D CHARACTERS ***
   30 PRODmulti_left (%6000,64,%E00)
   40 MODE 6
   50 PRINT" HELLO THERE!!"
   60 CALL%COO
   70 CALL&COO
   80 END
   90 :
 5430 DEF PRODmulti left (start, bytes, ad
de)
 5431 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP3
 5432 F%=addr
                 OPT PASS
 5433 E
 5434
                LDY bytes
5435
                ASL start
                LDX #1
 5436
 5437
                DEY
 5438 .next
5439
                ROL start.X
5440
                INX
5441
                DEY
 5442
                BNE next
5443
                RTS
 5444 ]
 5445 NEXT
5446 ENDPROC
```

Program 10.11. PROCmulti_left - performs an arithmetic shift left on a multi-byte number.

performing the initial ASL on 'start' (lines 5434 to 5436). The X register is loaded with one and after decrementing the Y register the 'next' loop is entered (lines 5436 to 5438). From here on, indexed addressing is used to facilitate the ROL on the remaining bytes.

The first handful of lines in the program point out the sort of interesting, and perhaps useful (!), applications the program can be used for. The test of line 50 is printed onto the MODE 6 screen before the memory used to hold the test is shifted left twice (lines 60 and 70). The net effect is to provide 3D text!

Program fact sheets

Program 10.1

Procedure title : PROCmulti_add

Variables required : count, first, second, addr

Line numbers : 5000 to 5019 Length : 16 bytes Zero page requirements : five bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 10.2

Procedure title : PROCmulti_sub

Variables required : count, first, second, addr

Line numbers : 5030 to 5049 Length : 16 bytes Zero page requirements : 5 bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 10.3

Procedure title : PROCmulti_mult

Variables required : first, second, totlen, count buffer.

addr

Line numbers : 5050 to 5128 Length. : 114 bytes Zero page requirements : 6 bytes Registers changed : A. X. Y

Program 10.4

Procedure title : PROCmulti_div

Variables required : first, second, totlen, count,

106 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

hidiv_pointer, pointer, buffer 1,

buffer2, addr

Line numbers : 5150 to 5257 Length : 154 bytes Zero page requirements : 11 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 10.5

Procedure title : PROConebyte_square

Variables required : byte, addr Line numbers : 5270 to 5294 Length : 27 bytes Zero page requirements : 2 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 10.6

Procedure title : PROCtwobyte_square

Variables required : byte, temp, addr Line numbers : 5300 to 5332 Length : 39 bytes Zero page requirements : 4 bytes

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 10.7

Procedure title : PROCtwo_byte_asl Variables required : num, block, addr Line numbers : 5350 to 5363

Length : 13 bytes
Zero page requirements : 2 bytes
Registers changed : A

Program 10.8

Procedure title : PROCtwo_byte_lsr Variables required : num, block, addr Line numbers : 5370 to 5383

Length : 13 bytes
Zero page requirements : 2 bytes
Registers changed : A

Program 10.9

Procedure title : PROCtwo_byte_ror Variables required : num, block, addr

Line numbers : 5390 to 5403 Length : 13 bytes Zero page requirements : 2 bytes Registers changed : A

Program 10.10

: PROCtwo_byte_rol Procedure title Variables required : num, block, addr Line numbers : 5410 to 5423 Length : 13 bytes Zero page requirements : 2 bytes Registers changed

Program 10.11

Procedure title : PROCmulti_left Variables required : start, bytes, addr Line numbers : 5430 to 5446 Length : 16 bytes Zero page requirements : 1 byte Registers changed : A, X, Y

Vision On

This chapter is devoted entirely to exploring the graphics capabilities of the Beeb from machine code. Many of the procedures are based on the VDU driver routine OSWRCH and all the graphics commands available from BASIC are implemented here plus a few more! These extras include two new screen modes which give scaled down versions of MODE 2 and MODE 5, plus a routine utilising the *640 table in the BASIC interpreter to convert an X, Y coordinate pair into the corresponding screen address.

I use many of these routines as part of a simple graphics compiler (SGC) which uses simple INPUT commands to call the appropriate PROC to compile the necessary machine code - but on to the routines.

Just mode about you

Program 11.1 performs a mode change in machine code. This is done by sending the VDU value 22 to the driver followed by the mode number which should be passed into the procedure via 'action'. The assembled code is very short - just 11 bytes including the RTS.

```
10 REM *** DO MODE **
20 CLS
30 INPUT"Which MODE ?"M%
40 PROCmode (M%,%COO)
50 CALL mode
60 PRINT"This is MODE ";M%
70 END
80 :
6000 DEF PROCmode (action,addr)
6001 P%=addr
6002 [
```

Program 11.1. PROCmode - performs a MODE change.

```
6003 .mode
6004 LDA #22
6005 JSR %FFEE
6006 LDA #action
6007 JSR %FFEE
6008 RTS
6009 1
6010 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.1. PROCmode - performs a MODE change (cont.).

Program 11.2 provides a new screen mode. As it is made out of the MODE 2 screen I have christened it MODE 2A. This new mode still has all the sixteen colours of a normal MODE 2 available but only requires half the memory, 10K, for displaying them. The screen itself is composed of 25 rows of 20 characters. The program is given in its long-winded form so that I can try to explain its operation better! Obviously, it would be more economical in terms of memory to implement the final version with the VDU codes in a look-up table using an indexing routine to pull them out one by one and send them to OSWRCH.

```
10 REM *** NEW MODE 2A SCREEN ***
  20 PROCmode2A (&A00)
  30 CALL &A00
  40 END
  50 :
6100 DEF PROCmode2A (addr)
6101 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP3
6102 P%=addr
6103 E
                OPT PASS
6104
               LDA #22
6105
               JSR &FFEE
6106
               LDA #2
6107
               JSR %FFEE
6108
               LDA #23
6109
               JSR &FFEE
6110
               LDA #0
6111
               JSR &FFEE
6112
               LDA #6
6113
               JSR &FFEE
6114
               LDA #25
6115
               JSR &FFEE
6116
               JSR SIX
6117
               LDA #23
6118
               JSR &FFEE
6119
               LDA #0
```

Program 11.2. PROCmode2A – implements a scaled down version of MODE 2.

6120		JSR	&FFEE
6121		LDA	#7
6122		JSR	&FFEE
6123		LDA	#30
6124			&FFEE
6125		JSR	SIX
6126		LDA	#23
6127		JSR	&FFEE
6128		LDA	#0
6129		JSR	
6130		LDA	#12
6131		JSR	&FFEE
6132		LDA	
6133		JSR	&FFEE
6134			SIX
6135			#23
6136			&FFEE
6137		LDA	_
6138			&FFEE
6139			#14
6140			&FFEE
6141		LDA	
6142			&FFEE
6143		JSR	
6144		LDA	
6145			&FE40
6146		LDA	
6147		STA	
6148		LDA	
6149		STA	
6150		LDA	
6151		STA	
6152		STA	
6153			834E
6154			&351
6155			%354
6156		STA	#&40
6157		LDA	
6158			
6159		STA	40
6160	CTY	RTS	
6161	-21Y	1.750	#0
6162		LDA LDX	
6163	AGATN	CDX	***
6164	. AGAIN	100	&FFEE
6165		DEX	OUT FIELE
6166		DEX	

Program 11.2. PROCmode2A – implements a scaled down version of MODE 2 (cont.).

6167 BNE AGAIN 6168 RTS 6169 J 6170 NEXT 6171 ENDPROC

Program 11.2. PROCmode2A - implements a scaled down version of MODE 2 (cont.).

It might be easier to understand exactly what is going on if the assembler is broken down into its BASIC equivalent which, incidentally, will also produce the desired effect,

Lines 6104 to 6107: MODE 2
Lines 6108 to 6116: VDU 23;6,25;0;0;0;
Lines 6117 to 6125: VDU 23;7,30;0;0;0;
Lines 6126 to 6134: VDU 23;12,8;0;0;0;
Lines 6135 to 6143: VDU 23;14,8;0;0;0;
Lines 6144 to 6145: ?&FE40=5
Lines 6146 to 6147: ?&302=56
Lines 6148 to 6149: ?&309=24
Lines 6150 to 6151: ?&D9=40
Lines 6152 to 6155: ?&34B=40
: ?&34E=40
: ?&351=40
: ?&354=40

Lines 6156 to 6159: HIMEM=&4000

The VDU statements (lines 6108 to 6143) reprogram several registers of the 6845 cathode ray tube controller (CRTC) which is responsible for organising the screen memory. The BASIC equivalents show that the first and second parameter bytes are used in programming the CRTC. The first determines the CRTC register and the second the value to be written into it. Taking the four VDU23 statements in turn they perform the following tasks:

- (a) Program number of lines
- (b) Set position of vertical sync in number of row times
- (c) Set top of screen address
- (d) Set cursor position

The remaining pokes write to the VDU variables directly which, strictly speaking, is rather naughty! The poke to & FE40 is writing to the system VIA scroll-controlling register, while the subsequent two pokes define the bottom row, in pixels, of the graphics window and the bottom row of the text window. &D9 holds the high byte of the

current address of the top scan line of a character (HIMEM is being set to &4000, thus the &40); &34B high byte of the top cursor location; &34E top+1 address of user memory; &351 the high byte address of the top left-hand corner of the screen; and finally &354 the high byte of the screen memory size.

Because the screen is not an official mode it is organised rather crookedly. For example, the pixel coordinates for the Y axis do not run from 0 to 1023 as one might expect but from 225 to 1023. Also, the screen itself tends to sit in the middle of the TV rather than using it all. To counteract the Y axis distortion, the graphics origin could be reset to 0,225 using VDU 29, thus:

VDU 29,0;225; MOVE 0.0

This will reduce the maximum on-screen Y graphics coordinate to 798 but the range 0 to 798 is easier to use than 225 to 1023! Figure 11.1 provides a suitable map of MODE 2A.

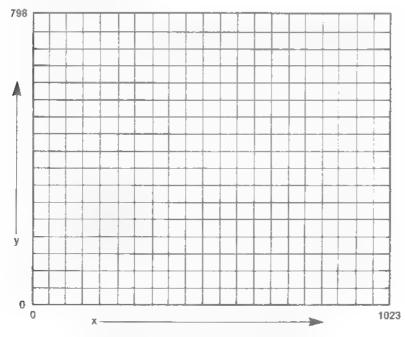


Fig. 11.1. The MODE 2A screen map.

Program 11.3 works along similar lines in that it pokes various VDU variables to set up a new graphics mode screen from MODE 5. However, rather than reprogramming the CRTC, it writes to the Video ULA using an OSBYTE call (lines 6027 to 6030). This writes,

```
10 REM *** NEW MODE 5A ***
  20 PROCmode5A (&A00)
  30 DRAW1000,100
  40 CALL %A00
  50 MOVE 100,100
  60 DRAW 1000,100
  70 DRAW 1000,1000
  BO DRAW 100,1000
  90 DRAW 100,100
 100 END
 110 :
6020 DEF PROCmode5A (addr)
6021 P%=addr
6022 E
6023
              LDA #22
6024
              JSR &FFEE
6025
              LDA #5
6026
             JSR &FFEE
6027
              LDA #154
6028
             LDX #224
6029
              JSR &FFF4
6030
             LDA #15
             STA &360
6031
6032
              LDA #1
6033
              STA &361
6034
             LDA #32
6035
             STA &34F
6036
             LDA #&55
6037
              STA &363
6038
             LDA #&AA
6039
             STA &362
6040
             LDA #9
6041
             STA &30A
6042
             LDA #20
6043
             JSR &FFEE
6044
             LDA #&54
6045
             STA &07
6046
              LDA #0
6047
              STA &6
6048
              JMP &FFEE
6049 ]
6050 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.3. PROCmode5A – implements ■ scaled down version of MODE 5.

in fact, to the Video Control Register whose layout is given in Figure 11.2. The byte written is 224 or &E0 in hex, thus causing a large cursor two bytes in width to be displayed.



Fig. 11.2. The Video Control Register.

This mode requires just 10K of RAM but also allows 16 colours like MODE 2 and MODE 2A! The mode allows 16 rows of 10 characters and HIMEM is set to &5400. The program description follows.

Lines 6023 to 6026: Select MODE 5.

Lines 6027 to 6029: Write to video ULA cursor control bits.

Lines 6030 to 6031: All 16 colours available.

Lines 6032 to 6033: Two 4-bit pixels per byte.

Lines 6034 to 6035: 32 bytes used per character.

Lines 6036 to 6039: Set colour details.

Lines 6040 to 6041: 10 characters on each line (0 to 9).

Lines 6042 to 6043: Do VDU 20 and rest default colours.

Lines 6044 to 6048: Set HIMEM = &5400.

Moving on

The three drawing-orientated processes, MOVE, DRAW and PLOT, can be performed using a VDU25 sequence, once again passing bytes through OSWRCH. After issuing the VDU25 sequence, OSWRCH expects five more bytes to be passed through to it. The first of these determines exactly what function is to be performed, while the remaining four bytes provide the double-byte values of first the X and then the Y coordinates, low bytes first.

Program 11.4 lists a suitable MOVE procedure. The MOVE code is 4 (line 6186) while the X. Y coordinates are passed for immediate addressing through the variables 'xpos' and 'ypos'. The demo uses the procedure to move the graphics cursor to the centre of the screen at 640,512 before plotting a point there (lines 20 to 50).

```
10 REM *** DD MACHINE CODE MOVE ***
```

20 PROCmove (640, 512, &A00)

30 MODE 5

40 CALL move

50 DRAW 640,512

60 END

70 :

Program 11.4. PROC move - performs MOVE

```
6180 DEF PROCmove(xpos,ypos,addr)
6181 P%=addr
6182 [
6183 .move
6184
               LDA #25
6185
               JSR &FFEE
6186
               LDA #4
               JSR &FFEE
6187
6188
               LDA #xpcs MOD 256
               JSR &FFEE
6189
6190
               LDA #xpos DIV 256
6191
               JSR &FFEE
               LDA #ypos MOD 256
6192
               JSR &FFEE
6193
6194
               LDA #ypos DIV 256
6195
               JSR &FFEE
6196
               RTS
6197 ]
6198 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.4. PROCmove - performs MOVE (cont.).

Program 11.5 uses the driver code 6 (line 6206) to execute the machine code equivalent of a DRAW. The positions passed into the procedure are taken to be the coordinates to draw to. The demo program draws a line diagonally across the MODE 4 screen from 0.0 to 1000,1000. Once again, immediate addressing is used in the program to obtain the X. Y coordinates which must therefore be passed into the procedure at assembly time.

```
10 REM *** DO MACHINE CODE DRAW LINE
122
   20 PRODdraw(1000,1000,%000)
   30 MODE 4
   40 MOVE 0.0
  50 CALL &COO
   60 END
   70 :
6200 DEF PROEdraw(xcord, ycord, addr)
6201 P%=addr
6202 T
6203 .draw_line
6204
                  LDA #25
6205
                  JSR &FFEE
6206
                  LDA #6
6207
                  JSR &FFEE
6208
                  LDA #xcord MOD 256
6209
                  JSR &FFEE
```

Program 11.5. PROCdraw - performs DRAW.

```
LDA #xcord DIV 256
6210
6211
                 JSR &FFEE
6212
                 LDA #ycord MOD 256
6213
                 JSR &FFEE
6214
                 LDA #ycord DIV 256
6215
                 JSR &FFEE
6216
                 RTS
6217 1
6218 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.5. PROCdraw - performs DRAW (cont.).

A PLOT is performed using the driver code which is equivalent to the plot function required. Program 11.6 shows how the PLOT code is passed into the procedure through the variable 'code'. The demo uses code 85 to draw and fill a triangle in a MODE 4 screen. As you may now realise, the previous two programs were, in fact, simply using the plot codes for move and draw.

```
10 REM *** DO MACHINE CODE PLOT ***
  20 PROCplot (85,1000,1000,%C00)
  30 MODE 4
  40 MOVE 0.0
  50 MOVE 1000,0
  60 CALL plot
  70 END
  80 :
6220 DEF PROCplot(code,xcord,ycord,addr
6221 P%=addr
6222 COPT 2
6223 .plot
6224
               LDA #25
6225
               JSR &FFEE
6226
               LDA #code
6227
               JSR &FFEE
6228
               LDA #xcord MOD 256
6229
               JSR &FFEE
6230
               LDA #xcord DIV 256
6231
               JSR &FFEE
6232
               LDA #ycord MOD 256
6233
               JSR &FFEE
6234
               LDA #ycord DIV 256
6235
               JSR &FFEE
6236
               RTS
6237 ]
6238 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.6. PROCplot - performs PLOT.

Paint-box

The use of colour is usually desirable for graphics and both COLOUR and GCOL can be readily performed. Program 11.7 can be used to redefine the text colour used by PRINT. It uses the

```
10 REM *** DO PRINT COLOUR ***
  20 PROCcolour (1,&C00)
  30 MODE 2
  40 CALL colour
  50 END
  40 :
6250 DEF PROCcolour(print_colour,addr)
4251 P%=addr
6252 [
6253 .colour
6254
                LDA #17
6255
                JSR &FFEE
6256
                LDA #print_colour
6257
               JSR &FFEE
6258
               RTS
6259 J
6260 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.7 PROCcolour -performs COLOUR.

Number	Colour
()	Black
1	Red
2	Green
3	Yellow
4	Blue
5	Magenta
6	Cyan
7	White
8	Flashing black white
9	Flashing red-cyan
10	Flashing green magenta
11	Flashing yellow-blue
12	Flashing blue-yellow
13	Flashing magenta-green
14	Flashing cyan red
15	Flashing white-black

Fig. 11.3. The physical colours.

VDU17 command with a second byte in the range 0 to 15 being passed to OSWRCH to define the colour. The number associated with each physical colour is detailed in Figure 11.3 and the chosen value should be passed to the procedure in the 'print_colour' variable. The demo sets up printing in red on a MODE 2 screen.

Program 11.8 shows how the background colour can be redefined using VDU17 again. Essentially the program is the same as its predecessor. To stipulate a background colour, however, the most significant bit of the colour byte must be set. In everyday terms, this simply means adding 128 to the colour value. After passing the background colour to the VDU driver (lines 6276 to 6277) the screen must be cleared. This is facilitated simply by printing the equivalent of a VDU12 (lines 6278 to 6279). The demo program initialises a red MODE 2 screen.

```
10 REM *** DO BACKGROUND COLOUR ***
  20 REM *** SET RED BACKGROUND ***
  30 PROCbackgrnd (129,&C00)
  40 MODE 2
  50 CALL backgrnd
  60 END
  70 :
6270 DEF PROCbackgrnd (back_col.addr)
6271 P%=addr
6272 C
6273 .backgrnd
6274
                LDA #17
6275
                JSR %FFEE
6276
                LDA #back_col
6277
                JSR &FFEE
6278
                LDA #12
6279
                JSR &FFEE
6280
                RT5
6281 ]
6282 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.8. PROCbackgrnd - changes the mode background colour.

Performing GCOL is almost as easy, however. The GCOL statement requires two parameters. After issuing VDU18 first, the byte depicting the action required (i.e. AND, OR, EOR) should be passed to OSWRCH followed by the colour. These bytes are shown in Program 11.9 as 'action' and 'colour' and the associated demo program (lines 10 to 70) set up a flashing black and white diagonal line across the MODE 2 screen.

```
10 REM *** DO MACHINE CODE GCOL ***
  20 REM *** FLASHING B/W LINE ***
  30 PROCecol (0,8,&C00)
  40 MODE 2
  50 CALL gool
  60 MOVE 0,0:DRAW 1000,1000
  80 :
6285 DEF PROEgcol (action, colour, addr)
6286 P%=addr
6287 [
6288 .gcol
6289
                LDA #18
6290
               JSR &FFEE
               LDA #action
6291
6292
               JSR &FFEE
               LDA #colour
6293
6294
               JSR &FFEE
6295
               RTS
6296 ]
6297 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.9. PROCgcol - performs GCOL.

The graphics screen can be cleared from BASIC using the command CLG. In machine code this is simplicity itself and only requires the vdu driver to print the code 16 through OSWRCH. Program 11.10 demonstrates this.

```
10 REM##CLEAR GRAPHICS SCREEN -CLG##
  20 PROSclg (&COO)
  30 MODE 2
  40 COLOUR129
  50 CLS
  60 PRINT"PRESS A KEY TO CLEAR SCREEN"
  70 A=GET
  80 CALL &COO
  90 END
 100 :
6300 DEF PROCelg (addr)
6301 P%=addr
6302 I
6303 .clear_graphics
6304
                     LDA #16
6305
                    JSR &FFEE
6306
                    RTS
6307 1
6308 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.10. PROCclg - performs CLG.

Programming the palette is done as in BASIC using VDU19 in the form:

```
VDU 19, log, phy, 0,0,0
```

where 'log' and 'phy' refer to the logical and physical colours respectively. Program 11.11 shows how this is translated into assembler. After the 19 is printed (lines 6314 and 6315) the logical and physical colour codes are passed to OSWRCH (lines 6316 to 6319) followed by the three padding zeros (lines 6320 to 6323) reserved for future expansion, whatever that is! Once again, the values passed into the procedure for 'log' and 'phy' are interpreted as immediate values by the assembler.

The lines 10 to 110 show how the procedure is used in this case to re-set the current screen background logical colour to each physical colour in turn.

```
10 REM *** DO VDU 19 ***
  20 REM## 50 FRU ALL COLOURS ##
  30 MODE 2
  40 FOR loop=1 TO 15
  50 PROCchange_palette (0,loop,&C00)
  60 CALL chapalette
  70 FOR N=0 TO 999: NEXT
  80 NEXT
  90 PROCchange_palette (0,0,&C00)
 100 CALL chopalette
 110 END
 120 :
6310 DEF PROCchange_palette (log.phy.ad
6311 P%=addr
6312 COPT 2
6313 .chgpalette
6314
                LDA #19
6315
                JSR &FFEE
6316
                LDA #1co
6317
                JSR &FFEE
6318
                LDA #phy
6319
                JSR &FFEE
6320
               LDA #0
6321
                JSR &FFEE
6322
                JSR &FFEE
6323
                JSR &FFEE
6324
               RTS
6325 ]
6326 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.11. PROCchange_palette - reprograms the palette using OSWORD.

Read it write!

f

Occasionally it is useful to be able to know the last two sets of coordinates visited by the graphics cursor, so Acorn have implemented an OSWORD call to enable this feat. The call code is 13 and as with all OSWORD calls an address held with the index registers points to a parameter block where in this case OSWORD deposits the required information, Figure 11.4 details the information contained in the block after the call and Program 11.12 the technique. Lines 10 to 140 demonstrate the call by first moving the

```
XY+0: previous X coordinate LSB
XY+1: previous X coordinate MSB
XY+2: previous Y coordinate LSB
XY+3: previous Y coordinate MSB
XY+4: current X coordinate LSB
XY+5: current X coordinate MSB
XY+6: current Y coordinate LSB
XY+7: current Y coordinate MSB
```

Fig. 11.4. OSWORD 13 parameter block for reading last two graphics coordinates.

graphics cursor to a few positions on the MODE 4 screen before calling the procedure and reading its eight-byte result from the parameter block which in this instant is in zero page.

```
REM ### READ LAST 2 GRAPHICS ###
  20
     REM *** CURSOR POSITIONS
  30
     MODE 4
     MOVE 200,200
  40
  50
      DRAW 500,500
  60
     MOVE 700,700
  70
     DRAW 900.900
  80
     CLS
  90 PROEquirsor (%70, &C00)
 100
    CALL &EOO
 110 FOR loop=&70 TO &77
 120 PRINT~loop:"
                    ":?1000
 130 NEXT 100p
 140
    END
 150
6330 DEF PROCecursor(block,addr%)
6331 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
```

Program 11.12. PROCgcursor – uses OSWORD to read the last two graphics coordinates.

```
6332 P%=addr%
6333 EOPT pass
6334 LDA #13
6335 LDX #block MOD 256
6336 LDY #block DIV 256
6337 JSR &FFF1
6338 RTS
6339 ]
6340 NEXT
6341 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.12. PROCgcursor – uses OSWORD to read the last two graphics coordinates (cont.).

The condition of any pixel on the screen can also be read using OSWORD with the accumulator holding 9 - in effect, mimicking BASIC's POINT command (see Program 11.13). Before calling the operating system routine, the obligatory parameter block (detailed in Figure 11.5) must have some relevant details placed into it, namely the X,Y coordinates of the byte to be tested. Each coordinate uses

```
10 REM READ PIXEL VALUES
  20 PROCpixel (&70,100,100,&C00)
  30 MODE 2
  40 CALL&COO
  50 PRINT~block?4
  60 END
  70 #
6350 DEF PROCpixel(block, X, Y, addr)
6351 FDR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
6352 P%=addr
6353 EOPT pass
                 LDA #X MOD 256
6354
                 STA block
6355
                 LDA #X DIV 256
6356
                 STA block+1
6357
6358
                LDA #Y MOD 256
6359
                 STA block+2
6360
                 LDA #Y DIV 256
                 STA block+3
6361
                 LDX #block MOD 256
6362
                LDY #block DIV 256
6363
                LDA #9
6364
                 JSR &FFF1
6365
                 RTS
6366
6367 ]
6368 NEXT
6369 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.13. PROCpixel - reads the state of ■ screen pixel.

```
XY+0 : X coordinate LSB
XY+1 : X coordinate MSB
XY+2 : Y coordinate LSB
XY+3 : Y coordinate MSB
XY+4 : Logical colour of point. &FF if point off screen.
```

Fig. 11.5. OSWORD 9 parameter block to perform POINT.

two bytes of the parameter block and these are derived in lines 6345 to 6361 of the procedure. The procedure again assumes that the actual coordinates, and not an address containing them, are passed through the variable X and Y. Each byte is then stored in the relevant parameter block location. After seeding the parameter block address into the index registers (lines 6362 to 6364) the OSWORD call is performed leaving the logical colour of the coordinate in the fifth block of the parameter block – or &FF if the point was off of the screen.

The colour palette can itself be read using an OSWORD 11 as shown in Program 11.14. The logical colour to be read should be

```
10
     REM *** READ COLOUR PALETTE ***
  20 MODE 4
  30 VDU19, 1, 3, 0, 0, 0
  40 PROCreadpalette (%70, %E00, 1)
  50 CALL &COO
  60 PRINT"Logical colour :":7%70
  70 PRINT"Physical colour :":?%71
  80 END
  90 :
6380 DEF PROCreadpalette (block, addr%,
L7.)
6381 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
6382 P%=addr%
6383 IDPT pass
6384
                 LDA #L%
6385
                 STA block
6386
                 LDA #11
6387
                 LDX #block MOD 256
6388
                 LDY #block DIV 256
6389
                 JSR &FFF1
6370
                 RTS
6391 1
6392 NEXT pass
6393 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.14. PROCreadpalette – reads the physical colour associated with ■ logical colour.

placed into the five-byte parameter block. After the call, the physical colour currently assigned to the logical colour is in the second byte of the parameter block. The remaining three parameter block bytes contain zero – yes, for future expansion! The BASIC demo uses the call to read the physical colour assigned to logical colour 1 on the MODE 4 screen, this having been defined prior to the call in line 30 as 3.

Program 11.15 performs the operation in the reverse direction by writing to the palette using OSWORD 12. The parameter block is identical to that in a read operation except that the physical colour to be written must also be placed into the parameter block. The procedure passes both logical and physical colours to the assembler through the variables L% and PY%. The demo resets the MODE 4 logical colour 0, the background colour, to physical colour yellow, thereby performing an instant change in background colour.

```
10 REM *** WRITE TO PALETTE ***
  20 MODE 4
   30 PRDCwritepalette (&70,0,3,&000)
  40 CALL &C00
  50 END
  60 :
6400 DEF PROCwritepalette (block, L%, PY%
.addr%)
6401 P%=addr%
6402 E
6403
                 LDA # L%
6404
                 STA block
6405
                 LDA # PY%
                 STA block+1
6406
6407
                 LDA #0
                 STA block+2
6408
6409
                 STA block+3
6410
                 STA block+4
6411
                 LDA #12
                 LDX #block MOD 256
6412
6413
                 LDY #block DIV 256
6414
                 JSR &FFF1
6415
                 RTS
6416 J
6417 ENDPROC
```

Program 11.15. PROCwritepalette - performs VDU 19.

Co-ordinating screen addresses

The final routine in this chapter. Program 11.16, utilises the BASIC interpreter's *640 table at &C357 to convert an XY coordinate position on the screen (MODES 0, 1 and 2 only) into an absolute memory address. The table is a 32 byte by 2 byte affair which, unusually, is presented high byte first.

```
10 REM ## CONVERT X,Y TO ADDRESS ##
   20 PROCxyaddr (&80, &72, &71, &900)
   30 REPEAT
   40 INPUT"What is the X axis value - 0
to 79 "?&71
   50 INPUT" "What is the Y axis value -
0 to 255 "?%72
   60 CALLCODE
   70 PRINT ? 280+? 281 * 256
   80 UNTILO
   90 :
6500 DEFPROCxyaddr(vector, yaxis, xaxis
. addr)
6501 FORI%=0T02 STEP2
6502 P%=addr
6503 E
                 DPTI%
6504 . CODE
                LDA#0
4505
                STA vector
6506
6507
                STA vector+2
6508
                LDA#&30
6509
                STA vector+1
6510
               LDA yaxis
                AND#7
6511
6512
               STA yaxis +1
6513
               EOR yaxis
6514
                LSRA
6515
                LSRA
6516
                TAY
6517
                INY
6518
                LDA&C375, Y
6519
                CLC
6520
                ADC vector
6521
                ADC yaxis +1
6522
                STA vector
6523
                DEY
6524
                LDA&C375, Y
6525
                ADC vector+1
```

Program 11.16. PROCxy_addr - converts an X,Y coordinate into a screen address.

6526 6527 6528 6529 .LOOP	STA vector+1 LDA xaxis LDX#3
6530	ASLA
6531	ROL vector+2
6532	DEX
6533	BNE LOOP
6534	ADC vector
6535	STA vector
6 536	LDA#O
6537	ADC vector+2
6538	ADC vector+1
6539	STA vector+1
6540	LDY#0
6541	LDA#&FF
6542	STA(vector).Y
6543	RTS
6544]	
6545 NEXT	
6546 ENDPRO	IC

Program 11.16. PROCxy addr - converts an X,Y coordinate into a screen address (cont.).

The program begins by clearing a few bytes of memory (lines 6505 to 6509) and setting vector to the start screen address. The MOD 8 value of the 'yaxis' is then calculated along with the DIV 8 value (lines 6510 to 6513). The actual value to be calculated is, in fact, Y DIV 8 *640. However, since the table values are two-byte the DIV is restricted to 4 (lines 6514 to 6516). The accumulator is transferred into the Y register to get the index into the table, and is subsequently incremented to get the second, low byte (lines 6516 to 6518).

The low byte is added to give Y axis MOD 8 (lines 6519 to 6522) and after extracting the high byte from the table this is added to give Y axis DIV 8 *640 (lines 6523 to 6527). Finally, the X axis value is multiplied by 8 and any bits falling off are caught in 'vector+3' (lines 6528 to 6533). This is then added to the low byte of the screen address to give the final address (lines 6534 to 6539). By way of demonstration, &F is then poked into screen memory at this point: to see this the program will need to be run in MODE 2 (lines 6540 to 6542).

Program fact sheets

Program 11.1

Procedure title : PROCmode
Variables required : action, addr
Line numbers : 6000 to 6010
Length : 11 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A

Program 11.2

Procedure title : PROCmode2A

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 6100 to 6170

Length : 153 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A, X

Program 11.3

Procedure title : PROCmode5A

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 6020 to 6049

Length : 58 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 11.4

Procedure title : PROCmove
Variables required : xpos, ypos, addr
Line numbers : 6180 to 6198
Length : 31 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A

Program 11.5

Procedure title : PROCdraw

Variables required : xcord, vcord, addr

Line numbers : 6200 to 6218

Length : 31 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

128 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Program 11.6

Procedure title : PROCplot

Variables required : code, xcord, ycord, addr

Line numbers : 6220 to 6238

Length : 31 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 11.7

Procedure title : PROCcolour

Variables required : print_colour, addr

Line numbers : 6250 to 6260
Length : 11 bytes
Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 11.8

Procedure title : PROCbackgrnd
Variables required : back_col, addr
Line numbers : 6270 to 6282
Length : 16 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A

Program 11.9

Procedure title : PROCgcol

Variables required : action, colour, addr

Line numbers : 6285 to 6297

Length : 16 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 11.10

Procedure title : PROCclg Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 6300 to 6308

Length : 6 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A

Program 11.11

Procedure title : PROCchange_palette

Variables required : log, phy, addr Line numbers : 6310 to 6326 Length : 27 bytes Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 11.12

Procedure title : PROCgcursor
Variables required : block, addr
Line numbers : 6330 to 6341
Length : 10 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 11.13

Procedure title : PROCpixel

Variables required : block, X, Y, addr Line numbers : 6350 to 6369 Length : 26 bytes Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 11.14

Procedure title : PROCreadpalette
Variables required : block, addr. 1.%
Line numbers : 6380 to 6393
Length : 14 bytes
Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 11.15

Procedure title : PROCwritepalette Variables required : block, L%, PY%, addr

Line numbers : 6400 to 6417

Length : 26 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A, X, Y

130 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Program 11.16

Procedure title : PROCxy_addr

Variables required : vector, yaxis, xaxis, addr

Line numbers : 6500 to 6545 Length : 69 bytes

Zero page requirements : 6 bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Twelve

Assembling Data and Lists

Most programs written by most advanced BASIC programmers require the manipulation of data at some stage. Everyday life revolves around manipulating data and lists correctly. A telephone directory or an address book are samples of ordered lists (though a look at my address book with its loose and sellotaped pages would make you think otherwise!) whereby each entry is in alphabetical order. Searching through the pages for a particular address or phone number is quite simple. Imagine the problems if these entries were unordered.

Performing searches, adding and deleting items from lists and sorting in machine code is not as easy as its BASIC counterparts. The procedures in this chapter cover each of these aspects and should provide you with the basis for most of the data handling you require.

The programs provided in this chapter are:

Program 12.1: Byte search.

Program 12.2: Add a byte to an ordered list.

Program 12.3: Delete a byte from an ordered list.

Program 12.4: Find minimum and maximum values in an unordered list.

Program 12.5: Delete a byte from an unordered list.

Program 12.6: Access ■ byte in ■ one-dimensional byte array.

Program 12.7: Access a byte in a two-dimensional byte array.

Program 12.8: Access a word from a one-dimensional word array.

Program 12.9: Four-byte signed integer sort.

Program 12.10: Form new list from an old list of every nth element,

Program [2.1]: Perform quicksort on a four-byte integer array.

Byte search

Program 12.1 provides a single-byte binary search algorithm through

an ordered list. Just to clarify, an ordered list is ■ list in which its element are arranged in an ascending order. For example,

```
1,2,3,4,5,6...
```

would be an example of an ordered list, whereas

```
4.9.2.6.8.12.34.2.1.0...
```

is an example of an unordered list.

Because the list is ordered, it is not necessary for the machine code to search through the entire list. What the binary search technique does is to divide the list into half; calculate which half the search byte is in and divide this section in half again. This process continues until the search byte is located by zeroing in on it.

```
10 REM *** SINGLE BYTE BINARY SEARCH
***
   20 PROCbin_search (&70,&71,&73,&74,&A
00)
   30 FOR loop=0 TO 150
   40 loop?&4001=loop
   50 NEXT loop
   60 ?&4000=150
   70 ! & 71 = & 4000
  80 7&70=75
  100 CALL bin search
  110 RESULT%#?&73
  120 IF RESULT%=0 PRINT"NOT FOUND" : EN
  130 PRINT"BYTE LOCATED AT +":RESULT%
  140 END
  150 :
7000 DEF PROCbin_search (byte, list, pos,
temp.addr)
7001 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
7002 P%≃addr
7003 E
7004
                OPT PASS
7005 .bin_search
7006
                LDY #0
7007
                LDA (list), Y
7008
                STA pos
7009
                STA temp
7010
                INY
7011 .next_byte
7012
                LSR pos
```

Program 12.1. PROCbin_search - performs a binary search on an ordered list.

```
7013
                BNE not_finished
7014
                BCS over
7015
                RTS
7016 .not_finished
7017
                BCC over
                INC pos
701B
7019 .over
7020
                LDA (list), Y
7021
                CMP byte
7022
                BEQ byte found
7023
                BCS sub inc
7024
                TYA
                ADC pos
7025
7026
                CMP temp
                BEO equal
7027
7028
                BCS next_byte
7029 .equal
7030
                TAY
7031
                JMP next byte
7032 .sub_inc
7033
                TYA
                SBC pos
7034
7035
                BEQ next_byte
7036
                BCS set
7037
                BMI next_byte
7038 .set
7039
                TAY
                JMP next_byte
7040
7041 .byte_found
7042
                STY pos
7043
                RTS
7044 3
7045 NEXT
7046 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.1. PROCbin_search - performs a binary search on an ordered list (cont.).

The program searches the list looking for the 8-bit value held in 'byte'. The list is addressed indirectly so the vector 'list' is used to hold its address, &4000 in the demo. Note that the very first byte of the list is not, in fact, an element but the length of the list itself. The list proper therefore starts at (list)+1. The variable 'pos' is used to return the position of the element in the list; if this byte contains 0 it means that the element was not found. Remember that a value of I would be returned if the element was the very first in the list.

The binary search begins by obtaining the length of the list from the length of list element (lines 7005 to 7009). The search proper is then begun by executing a logical shift right on the list length byte in 'pos' (line 7012), thus dividing it by two. A result of zero indicates that the list does not contain the element being searched for and the RTS of line 7015 returns back to the calling routine leaving 'pos' holding zero. If the carry flag is set, control continues from 'over' (line 7019). The INC instruction of line 7018 is used to round any odd numbers up to an even one should the division have left an odd value in 'pos'.

The byte comparison is nothing unusual. If the byte is found, the branch to 'byte_found' is performed (line 7022) where the Y register's contents are placed in 'pos' and an RTS performed (lines 7041 to 7043). If the byte is not located then the program needs to determine which half of the section in which it is located contains the byte so that the program can halve that section. Assuming that the byte is larger than the element tested, the branch to 'sub_inc' is performed (line 7023). Here the current 'pos' is subtracted from the Y register, now transferred into the accumulator (lines 7032 to 7034) resulting in the lower portion of the list half being searched for the 'byte'. If, on the other hand, the byte is less than the element tested the branch does not take place and the 'pos' is added to the Y register so that the search continues in the upper section of the list half (lines 7024 to 7028).

The demo section of the program (lines 30 to 130) shows how the data needs to be set up before calling the subroutine. The procedural call assembles the routine at &A00 using five locations in zero page for variable storage, though only 'list' need be there. The FOR...NEXT loop then pokes an ordered list into memory from &4000 placing the number of elements in the list, 150, into the first byte (lines 30 to 60), before placing the address of the list in 'list' (line 70). The byte to be searched for - in this case 75 - is then poked into location &70 as this corresponds to 'byte'. After running the program, the result returned is

BYTE LOCATED AT ±76

which is correct because $75 \pm 1 = 76$.

An ordered addition

Figure 12.1 flowcharts very simply the steps required in adding an element to a list of ordered elements. It would be easy to look through each item in the list in turn, starting with the first element, moving onto the next and so forth until a number less than the byte and



Fig. 12.1. Flowchart for PROCordered_add.

greater than the byte to be added is found. A space can be made for the byte by moving the distal portion of the list up memory by a byte, and the byte is inserted. This is not particularly efficient especially as we now have a binary search subroutine to hand!

Program 12.2 combines Program 12.1, further illustrating the use of procedures to assemble segments of code, while the procedure PROCordered_add uses 'bin_search' as a subroutine call (line 7155) to locate the desired position of the new element to be added.

```
10 REM *** ADDITION OF AN ELEMENT TO
***
   20 REM *** AN DRDERED LIST
222
   30 PROCbin_search (&70,&71,&73,&74,&3
000)
   40 addr=P%
   50 PROCondered add(&70,&71,&73,&74,ad
dr)
   60 FOR loop=0 TO 254 STEP2
   70 ?(&4000+(loop/2))=loop
   80 NEXT
   90 ?&4000=127
  100 !871=84000
  110 2870=221
```

Program 12.2. PROCordered_add - adds a value to an ordered list.

```
120 FOR N=&4000 TO (&4000+128)
  130 PRINT "N:" ":?N
  140 NEXT
  150 PRINT"Press a key to execute "
  160 A=5ET
  170 CALL add element
  180 FOR N=&4000 TD (&4000+128)
  190 PRINT "N:" ";?N
  200 NEXT
  210 END
 220 ±
 7100 DEF PROCbin_search (byte, list, pos,
temp, addr)
 7101 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 7102 P%=addr
 7103 E
 7104
                OPT PASS
 7105 .bin_search
                LDY #0
 7106
                LDA (list).Y
 7107
 7108
                STA pos
 7109
                STA temp
 7110
                INY
 7111 .next_byte
                LSR pos
 7112
 7113
                BNE not_finished
 7114
                BCS over
 7115
                RTS
 7116 .not_finished
 7117
                BCC over
 7118
                INC pos
 7119 .over
                LDA (list),Y
 7120
                CMP byte
 7121
 7122
                BEG byte_found
                BCS sub_inc
 7123
                TYA
 7124
                ADC pos
 7125
                CMP temp
 7126
 7127
                BEQ equal
 7128
                BCS next_byte
 7129 .equal
 7130
                TAY
                JMP next byte
 7131
 7132 .sub_inc
                TYA
 7133
 7134
                SBC pos
 7135
                BEG next byte
```

Program 12.2. PROCordered_add - adds a value to an ordered list (cont.).

```
BCS set
7136
7137
                BMI next byte
7138 .set
7139
                TAY
7140
                JMP next_byte
7141 .byte_found
7142
                STY pes
7143
                RTS
7144 ]
7145 NEXT
7146 X=addr
7147 ENDPROC
7148 :
7149 DEF PROCordered add(byte, list, pos,
temp, addr)
7150 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP3
7151 P%=addr
7152 [
7153
                OPT PASS
7154 .add_elememt
7155
                JSR bin_search
7156
                LDA pos
7157
                BNE present
7158
                STY pos
7159
                SEC
               LDA temp
7160
7161
                SBC pos
7162
                TAX
7163
               LDA byte
7164
               CMF (list),Y
7165
                BCS greater
7166
                INY : INX
7167
                JMP get_index
7168 .greater
7169
                INC pos
7170
                CPX #0
7171
                BEQ enter_element
7172 .get_index
7173
                LDY temp
7174 .next_element
7175
                LDA (list),Y
7176
                INY
7177
                STA (list).Y
7178
                DEY
7179
                DEY
7180
                DEX
7181
                BNE next_element
7182 .enter_element
```

Program 12.2. PROCordered_add - adds a value to an ordered list (cont.).

```
7183
                LDA byte
7184
                LDY pos
                STA (list), Y
7185
                INC temp
7186
7187
                LDA temp
                LDY #0
7188
7189
                STA (list), Y
7190 .present
7191
                RTS
7192 1
7193 NEXT
7194 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.2. PROCordered_add - adds ■ value to an ordered list (cont.).

The PROCordered_add procedure (lines 7149 to 7194) uses the same variables, locations as the binary search procedure. Before it is called, the machine code assembled by the former expects to find the element to be added to the ordered list in 'byte', the location of the list in 'list' and the first byte of the list stating the number of elements in the list.

After the 'bin_search' subroutine call, the accumulator's contents are loaded with 'pos'. Remember, if the list did not contain the byte being searched out, this will be zero. If the byte is non-zero, the list already contains the element and need not be added - therefore the branch to 'present' (line 7157) is performed and the program completes. If the byte is zero the byte is not present, and the Y register holds the position of the last element to be examined before the search was exited. As it happens, this also corresponds to the position in the list where the binary search routine expected to find it! The Y register is therefore saved in 'pos' (line 7158) and the position where the byte to be added is to one side of this element.

Before the routine locates exactly where the byte is to be added it must first calculate how many elements must be moved up a byte to make space for the new addition. This is really quite simple as it just requires 'pos' to be subtracted from 'temp' (lines 7159 to 7161), where 'temp' is used to hold the list's length. The result is then transferred across into the X register (line 7162) to act as a loop counter when the move takes place.

Calculating the exact position of the byte in the list is facilitated with a simple comparison with the element pointed to by the Y register index (line 7164). If this sets the carry flag, the position is immediately following the element pointed to by the index register therefore the branch to 'greater' is performed (line 7165) where 'pos' is incremented. The compare X with zero instructions (lines 7170 to 7171) test to see whether the entry position will be outside the list in which case no space needs to be made for it. If the comparison clears the carry flag then after incrementing the X register (line 7166) a jump is performed.

Moving the upper section of the list is straightforward. Starting with the highest element, each byte is read, the Y register incremented and the byte stored (lines 7172 to 7177). Subtracting two from the Y register restores the index at the next byte, while the X register acting as counter is decremented to signify one less element to move (lines 7178 to 7181). Ensuring that the move is performed in the reverse order, down memory is important so as not to overwrite other elements in the list before they are also transferred!

Finally, the 'enter_element' routine pokes the new element into its correct position and the number of elements in the list is updated by adding one to it (lines 7182 to 7189).

The BASIC demo provides details on the ordered add routine's use. The two sections of assembler are assembled (lines 30 to 50) passing the value of the program counter through 'addr' to ensure that the two subroutines occupy successive bytes in memory. The FOR...NEXT loop then pokes an ordered list into memory from &4000 which consists of only even numbers (lines 60 to 80). Lines 90 and 100 set up the number of elements in the list and the 'list' vector itself. The value to be inserted into the list, 221 - an odd number - is then poked into 'byte'.

The entire contents of the list are then printed out to ensure that only even numbers in steps of two are present (lines 120 to 160). After the 'add_element' call the list is reprinted and the new element can be seen at the top of the screen (lines 170 to 210).

An ordered delete

Deleting an element from an ordered list is performed simply by using a slightly modified Program 12.2. All that is required is first to find the position of the element in the list using the 'bin_search' routine and then move all the elements distal to the byte down memory by one, thereby overwriting the byte to be deleted. Program 12.3 lists the delete program in its entirety while the BASIC demo is similar to the one previously described.

```
10 REM *** DELETE AN ENTRY FROM WITHI
N xxx
   20 REM *** AN ORDERED LIST
  ***
   30 PROChin_search (&70,&71,&73,&74,&3
0001
   40 addr=P%
   50 PROCordered_del(&70,&71,&73,&74,ad
de)
   60 FOR N%=0 TD 200
   70 7 (&4001+N%)=N%
   80 NEXT
  90 7&70=179
  100 7&4000=700
  110 1&71=&4000
  120 CALL del element
  130 FOR N%=0 TO 200
  140 PRINT~(N%+&4001):" ":?(N%+&4001)
  150 NEXT
  160 END
  170 ±
 7200 DEF PROCbin search (byte, list, pos,
temp, addr)
 7201 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 7202 F%=addr
 7203 E
 7204
                OPT PASS
7205 .bin_search
                LDY #0
 7206
7207
                LDA (list).Y
 7208
                STA pos
7209
                STA temp
7210
                INY
 7211 "next_byte
 7212
                LSR pos
 7213
                BNE not finished
7214
                BCS over
 7215
                RTS
 7216 .not_finished
 7217
                BCC over
 7218
                INC pos
 7219 .over
 7220
                LDA (list).Y
7221
                CMP byte
 7222
                BEO byte found
                BCS sub_inc
 7223
 7224
                TYA
 7225
                ADC pos
```

Program 12.3. PROCordered_del - deletes ■ value from an ordered list.

```
7226
                CMP temp
7227
                BEQ equal
                BCS next_byte
7228
7229 .equal
7230
                TAY
7231
                JMP next_byte
7232 .sub_inc
7233
                TYA
7234
                SBC pos
7235
                BEQ next_byte
7236
                BCS set
7237
                BMI next_byte
7238 .set
7239
                TAY
7240
                JMP next_byte
7241 .byte_found
7242
                STY pos
7243
               RTS
7244 3
7245 NEXT
7246 X=addr
7247 ENDPROC
7248 :
7249 DEF PRDCordered_del(byte, list.pos,
temp, addr)
7250 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
7251 F%=addr
7252 E
7253
                DPT PASS
7254 .del_element
7255
                JSR bin_search
7256
                LDA pos
7257
                BEO all_done
7258
                INY
7259 .next_element
7260
                LDA (list), Y
7261
                DEY
7262
                STA (list), Y
7263
                INY
7264
                INY
7265
               CPY temp
7266
                BCC next_element
7267
               BEQ next element
7268
                LDA temp
7269
                SBC #1
7270
                LDY #0
7271
                STA (list), Y
7272 .all_done
```

Program 12.3. PROCordered_del - deletes a value from an ordered list/cont.).

```
7273 RTS
7274 1
7275 NEXT
7276 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.3. PROCordered_del - deletes ■ value from an ordered list (cont.).

A maximum minimum

The ability to be able to locate the maximum and minimum values in a list is important - for example, in processing data from the ADVAL channels to determine a range of results. Program 12.4 performs this task on an unordered list; in an ordered list these would be the last and first bytes respectively in the list!

```
10 REM *** FIND MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM
 222
   20 REM *** VALUES N AN UNDROFFED LIST
 ***
   30 PROCmax_min_list(&70.&71,&72,&C00)
   40 ! & 72 = & 4000
   50 FOR loop=1 TO 100
   60 loop?&4000=RND(255)
   70 NEXT
   BO ?&4000=100
   90 CALL minmax
  100 PRINT "Mininum value was :":?%70
  110 PRINT "Maximum value was :":?&71
  120 END
  130 :
 7300 DEF PROCmax_min_list(min,max,list,
addr)
 7301 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 7302 P%=addr
 7303 I
                OPT PASS
7304 , minmax
7305
               LDY #0
7306
                LDA (list).Y
7307
                TAX
7308
                INY
7309
                LDA (list), Y
7310
                STA min
7311
                STA max
7312 .next_byte
                DEX
7313
7314
                BEQ all_done
```

Program 12.4. PROCmax_min_list - finds the maximum and minimum values in an unordered list.

```
INY
7315
7316
                LDA (list).Y
                CMP min
7317
                BCS test_max
7318
                STA min
7319
7320 .test_max
                CMP max
7321
                BCC next_byte
7322
                BEQ next_byte
7323
                STA max
7324
                JMP next byte
7325
7326 .all_done
                RTS
7327
7328 1
7329 NEXT
7330 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.4. PROCmax_min_list - finds the maximum and minimum values in an unordered list (cont.).

The routine finds these values by taking the first element from the list and then using this initially as the maximum and minimum values. Then each of the remaining elements in the list are compared in turn. If an element is found to be larger than the present maximum value it becomes the new maximum value. Similarly, if an element is located that is smaller than the current minimum value it takes the current minimum value's place. When the last element in the list has been sampled, the maximum and minimum values have been located.

The 'minmax' routine performs this get and compare procedure. The address of the unordered list is held within the vector 'list' while the variables 'min' and 'max' are used as stores for the two extremes. As with the previous list operations, the first byte in the list holds its length. The subroutine begins by accessing this length byte and moving it across into the X register to act as a counter after which the first element is read and placed in the two variable stores (lines 7304 to 7311).

The main loop of the program is entered at line 7312. The X register counter is decremented, and if zero all the elements have been shifted through so the program exits (lines 7313 to 7314). The indexing register is incremented and the next element in the list sought (lines 7315 to 7316). The element in the accumulator is then tested against that in 'min'. If this clears the carry flag a smaller element is indicated so this is stored as the new minimum value. If the carry is set by the comparison a larger value than 'min' is indicated so a branch to 'test_max' is performed (lines 7318 to 7320). Here, a comparison against 'max' takes place. If the byte in the accumulator

is found to be greater, it is stored at 'max', otherwise the next element in the list is sought out (lines 7321 to 7325).

The BASIC primer pokes 100 random single-byte values into a list starting at &4000 (lines 50 to 70) and the maximum and minimum values are ascertained by the 'minmax' routine.

An un-ordered delete

Program 12.5 shows how a byte can be deleted from an unordered list. Because the list is unordered, the binary search technique employed in the ordered lists cannot be used; instead, starting at the front of the list, each byte must be compared in turn. Once the byte is located, all that is required is to move all the distal elements remaining down through memory by a single byte, thus overwriting the deleted byte.

```
10 REM *** DELETE ITEM FROM UNORDERED
LIST ***
  20 PROCunordered_del(&70,&71,&C00)
  30 ?&70=255
  40 ! &71=&4000
  50 FOR N=1 TO 100
  60 ? (&4000+N)=N
  70 ?&4000=100
  BO NEXT
  90 ?&4050=255
 100 FDR N=&4000 TD &4064
 110 PRINT"N: ":?N
 120 NEXT
 130 A=GET
 140 CALL &COO
 150 FOR N=&4000 TO &4064
 160 PRINT"N: ":?N
 170 NEXT
 180 END
 190 :
7400 DEF PROCunordered_del(byte, list, ad
7401 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP3
7402 P%=addr
               OPT PASS
7403 E
               LDY #0
7404
               LDA (list),Y
7405
7406
               TAX
```

Program 12.5. PROCunordered_del - deletes ■ byte from an unordered list.

```
7407
                LDA byte
7408 .next
7409
                INY
7410
                EMP (list), Y
7411
                BEO delete
7412
                DEX
7413
                BNE next
7414
                RTS
7415 .delete
7416
                DEX
7417
                BEQ updat
7418
                INY
7419
                LDA (list).Y
7420
                DEY
7421
                STA (list), Y
7422
                INY
7423
                JMP delete
7424 .updat
7425
                LDA (list.X)
7426
                SBC #1
7427
                STA (list, X)
7428
                RTS
7429 1
7430 NEXT
7431 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.5. PROCunordered_del - deletes a byte from an unordered list

As with the other list processing programs, the address of the list is held in the vector 'list' while the first element in the list itself is its length. The byte to be deleted is placed in 'byte' prior to the call. Note that only the first occurrence of the 'byte' is deleted, not all occurrences.

The BASIC program sets up an unordered list (well, it's actually ordered but who cares!) and then pokes the value 255 into location &4050 (now its unordered!). The list is displayed both prior to and after the machine code call to show that the element has indeed been deleted from the list (lines 30 to 170).

First bytes

In many respects, a one-dimensional byte array can be thought of simply as a list either ordered or unordered. The purpose of Program 12.6 is to calculate the absolute address of an element in the byte array by summing the array's base address and index, and then to extract that byte from the array.

```
10 REM ##GET BYTE FROM BYTE ARRAY##
   20 PROCByte_array (%70,%71,%C00)
   30 FBR array=0 TO 255
   40 ?(arrav+&4000)=arrav
   50 NEXT
   60 ! $71=$4000
   70 ?&70=100
  90 CALL byte_array
   90 PRINT"Element in array was: ":7870
  100 END
  110 :
7500 DEF PROCbyte array (subscript, arra
y, addr)
 7501 FDR pass=0 TD 3 STEP 3
 7502 P%=addr
7503 E
7504
                OPT pass
 7505 .byte_array
7506
               LDA subscript
7507
                CLC
                ADC array
7508
                STA array
7509
7510
               BCC over
7511
                INC array+1
 7512 .cver
                LDY #0
 7513
7514
                LDA (array), Y
 7515
                STA subscript
                RTS
7516
7517 1
7518 NEXT
7519 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.6. PROCbyte_array – extracts a value from a one-dimensional byte array.

The assembler requires two variables to be passed into it; 'subscript' is the index into the array while 'array' is its base address. Because 'subscript' is a single-byte value the array may only be a maximum of 256 bytes in length. The addition of 'array' and 'subscript' is performed in lines 7506 to 7511, then using indirect addressing the element is extracted and stored in 'subscript' (lines 7513 to 7515).

The BASIC tester sets up an ordered byte array at &4000 then extracts the 100th element (lines 20 to 90). Note that, unlike a list, the byte array does not need its length to be placed in the first byte of the array, which therefore starts from the address given by 'array' rather than this address plus one.

Accessing a byte from a two-dimensional byte array is a little less

straightforward as there are two subscripts to take into consideration. These two subscripts are the row length and the column length. The resultant program is listed as Program 12.7 and basically it works by multiplying the row subscript by the row size and then adding the column subscript to its result. This result is then added to the base address of the array to give an absolute address.

```
10 REM *** ACCESSING A TWO DIMENSIONA
上 東京東
   20 REM *** BYTE ARRAY ANYWHERE IN RAM
  ***
   30 PROCtwodim_byte(&70,&72,&74,&76,&7
8. &3000)
   40 FDR count=1 TO 32
   50 ?(count+&4000)=count
   60 NEXT
   70 ! $70=2
   80 1872=4
   90 ! & 74=8
  100 1&78=&4000
  110 CALL twodimbyte
  120 @%=0
  130 PRINT'''
  140 PRINT"Address of element in array:
 8e 11 a
  150 PRINT~!&78 AND &FFFF
  160 PRINT' "Byte located here : ":
  170 PRINT?&70
  180 END
  190 :
 7530 DEF PROCtwodim_byte (subscript1,su
bscript2, sub_size, temp, array, addr)
 7531 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
7532 P%=addr
7533 t
7534
                OPT PASS
7535 .twodimbyte
7536
                LDA #0
7537
                STA temp
7538
                STA temp+1
7539
                LDX #17
7540
                CLC
7541 .multiply
7542
                ROR temp+1
7543
                ROR temp
7544
                ROR subscript1+1
7545
                RDR subscript1
```

Program 12.7. PROCtwodim_byte - extracts a value from a two-dimensional byte array.

7546	BCC no_add
7547	CFC UP-400
7548	
7549	LDA sub_size
	ADC temp
7550	STA temp
7551	LDA sub_size+1
7552	ADC temp+1
7553	STA temp+1
7554 .no_add	
7555	DEX
7556	BNE multiply
7557	LDA subscript1
755B	CLC
7559	ADC subscript2
7560	STA subscript1
7561	LDA subscript1+1
7562	ADC subscript2+1
7563	STA subscript1+1
7564	LDA array
7565	CLC
7566	ADC subscript1
7567	STA array
7568	LDA array+1
7569	ADC subscript1+1
7570	STA array+i
7571	LDY #1
7572	LDA (array),Y
7573	STA subscript1
7574	RTS
7575]	7 3 7 347
7576 NEXT	
7577 ENDPROC	
/3// ENDERUG	

Program 12.7. PROCtwodim_ byte – extracts a value from a two-dimensional byte array *(cont.).*

The program commences by clearing two bytes at 'temp' which will act as a partial product during the multiplication procedure which is based on a standard shift and add type of affair. The X register is then initialised as a counter, to count out the shifts required during the multiplication (lines 7536 to 7539). The 'multiply' routine (lines 7541 to 7556) then performs the row subscript×row length multiplication. When this is completed, the second subscript, the column, is added to the product of the multiplication (lines 7558 to 7563) and then to the base address of the array itself (lines 7565 to 7570). Finally, the array element is loaded into the accumulator and placed at 'subscript1'.

The BASIC program sets up the two-dimensional byte array using concurrent numbers. Of course, the array is stored physically in

memory as a continuous list but is implemented as depicted in Figure 12.2, consisting of 4 rows of 8 columns. The position of any point in the array is given by (row,column), therefore the byte at (2.5) would be 22. The two-byte subscripts are poked into their two-byte locations at 'subscript1' and 'subscript2' (lines 70 and 80). Line 90 then places the row length into the two-byte variable 'sub_size'. After calling the machine code, the absolute address of the element is extracted from 'array' and the byte that is located there is printed (lines 110 to 170).

	COLUMN										
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		
ROW	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
	1	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
	2	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24		
	3	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32		

Fig. 12.2. Construction of a two-dimensional byte array.

Word arrays

Program 12.8 takes the one-dimensional byte array program a step further and implements the extraction of a two-byte word from a one-dimensional word array. As each word entry is two bytes long, all that the program needs to do to calculate the address of a particular element is to multiply the subscript by two and then add this to the base address of the array,

```
10 REM *** GET WORD FROM SINGLE WORD
ARRAY ###
   20 PROEword_array ($70,$72,$800)
   30 FOR array=0 TO 255
   40 ?(array+&4000)=array
   50 NEXT
   60 ! &70=100
   70 ! $72=$4000
   80 CALL word array
   90 PRINT"Word element is : "; !&70 AND
&FFFF
  100 END
  110 ±
```

Program 12.8. PROCword_array - extracts a value from a one-dimensional word array.

```
7600 DEF PROCword_array (subscript,arra
y, addr)
 7601 FOR pass=0 TD 3 STEP 3
 7602 P%=addr
 7603 E
 7504
                OPT pass
 7605 .word_array
                LDA subscript
 7606
 7607
                ASL A
                STA subscript
 7608
 7609
                LDA subscript+1
 7610
                ROL A
                STA subscript+1
 7611
                CLC
7612
               LDA array
 7613
                ADC subscript
 7614
 7615
                STA array
 7616
               LDA array+1
 7617
               ADC subscript+1
 7618
                STA array+1
                LDY #0
 7619
 7620
                LDA (array),Y
 7621
                STA subscript
 7622
                INY
 7623
                LDA (array), Y
                STA subscript+1
 7624
                RTS
 7625
 7626 3
 7627 NEXT
 7628 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.8. PROCword_array - extracts a value from a one-dimensional word array (cont.).

To perform the multiplication on the two-byte subscript, a two-byte shift left is performed using the ASL ROL combination (lines 7606 to 7611). The double subscript is then added to 'array' (lines 7612 to 7618) and the two-byte word extracted and placed in 'subscript' (lines 7619 to 7624).

Integer sort

Handling single-byte sorts is relatively easy but arrays of multi-byte numbers are more complex to handle. Program 12.9 provides an algorithm to sort a set of four-byte integer numbers stored consecutively in memory. Note that it assumes signed values.

```
10 REM *** 4 BYTE SIGNED INTERGER SOR
T ***
   20 PRDEsprt32 (&70,&72,&74,&76,&C00)
   30 INPUT"How many numbers to sort ?"c
gunt.
   40 ?&76=count-1
   50 buffer=%4000
   60 2874=0:2875=840
   70 FOR random=0 TO count-1
   80 ! (buffer+4*random) =RND
   90 NEXT random
  100 DALL &D00
  110 FOR look=0 TO count-1
  120 PRINT ! (buffer+4*lcok)
  130 NEXT
  140 END
  150 :
 7700 DEF FROCsort32 (one.two,vector,cou
nt.addr )
 7701 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
 7702 P%=addr
 7703 E
 7704
                OPT cass
 7705 .entry
 7706
                LDA vector
                STA two
 7707
 7708
                LDA vector+1
 7709
                STA two+1
 7710
                LDA #0
 7711
                STA loop
 7712 .once_more
 7713
               LDY #0
 7714
                LDA two+1
 7715
                STA one+1
 7716
                LDA two
 7717
                STA one
 7718
                CLC
                ADC #4
 7719
 7720
                STA two
 7721
                BCC no inc
 7722
                INC two+1
7723 .no_inc
 7724
                LDX #4
 7725
                SEC
 7726 .subtract
 7727
                LDA (two), Y
 7728
                SBC (one).Y
 7729
                INY
```

Program 12.9. PROCsort32 - sorts a list of four-byte values.

```
DEX
7730
7731
                BNE subtract
7732
                BVC vclear
                EDR #&80
7733
7734 .vclear
                EOR #0
7735
                BPL no_swap
7736
                DEY
7737
7738 .swap
                LDA (one),Y
7739
                STA store
7740
7741
                LDA (two), Y
7742
                STA (one), Y
7743
                LDA store
7744
                STA (two), Y
7745
                DEY
7746
                BPL swap
7747 .nc_swap
774B
                INC Loop
7749
                LDA locp
7750
                CMP count
7751
                BNE once more
7752
                DEC count
7753
                BNE entry
7754
                RTS
7755 .loop
                EQUS" "
7756
7757 .store
                EQUS" "
7758
7759 1
7760 NEXT
7761 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.9. PROCsort32 - sorts a list of four-byte values (cont.).

The procedure passes four variables used by the assembler. The variable 'vector' is, as its name implies, a zero page vector that the machine code expects to contain the start address of the array. On entry to the code at 'entry' this address is passed into the two working vectors 'one' and 'two' (how's that for originality!), lines 7705 to 7711. The sort routine is, in fact, a 'bubble sort' procedure. This works by working through the numbers in the array and comparing sets of two contiguous numbers. If the lower number is greater than the second number then they are swapped over. This process continues through all the numbers in the array until there are none left. The net effect is that numbers seem to bubble up through the array, thus the terminology. The disadvantage of a bubble sort is that it is very slow. although this is not so noticeable in machine code. However, it is not nearly as fast as the quicksort described later.

Let's get back to the program description. After seeding both vectors, the address in 'two', which points to the second of the two integers, is placed in 'one' (lines 7713 to 7717) and the vector 'two' is incremented by 4 to give it the address of the next vector in the array (lines 7718 to 7722). The X register is used as a byte counter so is initialised to 4 (line 7724) whereupon the integer at 'one' is subtracted from the integer at 'two'. If on completion of the subtraction the overflow flag is set, it is necessary to reverse the sign of the most significant bit of the result now in the accumulator. This is performed in line 7733, and the EOR of line 735 will set the negative flag to the value of the most significant bit of the accumulator. This process is particularly important as the negative flag is used to determine whether a swap is needed or not. If the flag is clear, no swap is indicated and a branch to 'no_swap' performed. The swap takes place, therefore, if the negative flag is set and is carried out by lines 7738 to 7746.

The final bytes of code (lines 7747 to 7753) test to see if the bubble sort has been completed, i.e. when a pass through it results in no swaps being performed after which control is passed back to BASIC.

The BASIC demo routine at the start of the program pokes a random array of four-byte integers into a 'buffer' from &4000. After the sorting routine has been completed the array is displayed to show each four-byte integer in ascending order.

New lists for old

Program 12.10 uses an assembler routine to form mew list from an old one. What actually happens is that it extracts every nth item and places this in a list buffer elsewhere to form the list. This has many applications. For example, a list of four-byte integer numbers could be sorted into sub-lists of correspondingly significant bytes grouping all the most significant bytes together and so forth, which is useful if look-up tables are being used by another section of the program.

The program is straightforward and the assembler expects three variables. The first 'source' is the address of the main list, while 'new' is the address of the new list. Note that these are not implemented as vectored addresses but this could be used if desired. Finally, 'step' is the increment size determining the elements to be extracted.

After initialising the index registers, the main program loop is

```
10 REM *** FORM NEW LIST FROM OLD ***
   20 PROCnew list (&4000,&4200,5,&600)
   30 FOR N=0 TO 100
   40 ? (&4001+N) =N
   50 NEXT
   60 7%4000=100
   70 CALL &COO
   BO C=?&4200
   90 FOR N=0 TO C-1
  100 PRINT? (%4201+N)
  110 NEXT
  120 END
  130 :
 7770 DEF PROCnew_list (source,new,step,
addr)
 7771 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 7772 P%=addr
                 OPT pass
7773 ľ
7774
                LDY #0
7775
                LDX #0
 7776 .next_byte
 7777
                LDA source+1.Y
 7778
                STA new+1, X
 7779
                INX
 7780
                TYA
                CLC
 7781
                ADC #step
 7782
 7783
                TAY
 7794
                CMP source
                BCC next_byte
 7785
 7786
                STX new
 7787
                RT5
 7788 1
7789 NEXT
7790 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.10. PROCnew_list - creates a sublist from ■ main list.

entered at 'next_byte'. The first byte of the source list is accessed and saved in the new list (lines 7777 to 7778). The 'new' list indexing register is then incremented and the 'source' list indexing register incremented by the value of 'step'. As the first byte of the source list holds its length, this byte is compared to the new index value to see if the end of the list has been passed. If not, the loop branches to repeat again, otherwise the contents of X are saved at 'new' to provide its length details.

A fast guicksort!

The final program in this chapter, Program 12.11, provides a very fast four-byte integer sorting routine based on the 'quicksort' algorithm, also known in some areas of Highbury as a fastsort!

The quicksort procedure is less well known than the more illustrious bubble sort so a brief description of its working is probably useful. Consider the set of ten simple integers shown arranged randomly in Figure 12.3(a). One of these numbers is selected and is called the key. In the figure, the key is 46 and is shaded to make its position clear. Working from right to left, the key is in turn compared with each byte until smaller byte is encountered. First time through. the first smaller value encountered is the third one in, 24. The key then swaps positions with this byte as shown in Figure 12.3(b). Next, the search process is repeated but this time, working from left to right, the first byte encountered that is larger than the key is swapped with the key - 70 in this instance (Figure 12.3(c)). The process repeats again until no more swaps are possible, as Figure 12.3(d) shows.

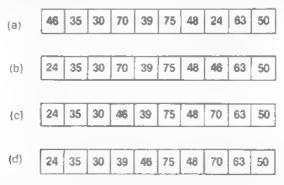


Fig. 12.3. (a) Assigning the key in a quicksort. (b) The array after the first quicksort pass. (c) The array after the second quicksort pass. (d) The array after the third quicksort pass.

Looking at Figure 12.3(d) carefully shows that it is divided into two halves. All the numbers on the left of the key are smaller than the key itself while those on the right are larger. In other words, the key has now found its final position in the list. The two sections of the list can now be sorted independently using new keys, and then the sections these provide and so on until the quicksort is completed.

Because the number of elements to be sorted reduces each time through the quicksort the time taken for it to complete its task is substantially quicker than the bubble sort method described earlier which processes the whole array each time through. In fact, to sort 1000 four-byte integers using the bubble sort would take around 50 seconds, compared with under two seconds for the quicksort. A BASIC version of the quicksort is only slightly slower than the assembler bubble sort!

```
10 REM *** FOUR BYTE INTEGER FASTSORT
   20 PRDEquick(%3900,%70,%72,%74,%76,%7
B. &7A. &80)
   30 (%80=%5000: (%80+2)=20
   40 FOR N=0 TO 20 STEP4
   50 ! ($5000+N) = RND: NEXT
   60 CALL fastsort
   70 FOR N=OTO 20 STEP4
   80 PRINT! (%5000+N): NEXT
   90 END
  100 :
 7800 DEF PROCquick(softstk.left.right.c
urrent_left,current_right,stack,middle,d
 7801 FOR pass=0 TD 3 STEP 3
 7802 P%=&4000
 7803 E
                  OFT pass
 7804 .fastsort
                 LDA #softstk MOD 254
 7805
                 STA stack
 7804
                LDA #softstk DIV 256
 7807
                 STA stack+1
 7808
                LDA data+2
 7809
                STA left
 7810
                LDA data+3
 7811
 7812
                 STA left+1
                LDY #1
 7813
 7814 .setup
                 LDA (left),Y
 7815
                 STA current_left, Y
 7816
                 DEY
 7817
 7818
                 BFL setup
                 LDY #2
 7819
 7820 .shift_two
 7821
                 ASL current left
                 ROL current left+1
 7822
 7823
                 DEY
                 BNE shift_two
 7824
 7825
                 LDA data
 7826
                 CLC
 7827
                 ADC current_left
 7828
                 STA right
```

Program 12.11. PROCquick - Implements ■ four-byte quicksort routine.

```
7829
             LDA data+i
7830
              ADC current_left+1
              STA right+1
7831
              LDA data
7832
7933
              SEC
7834
              SBC #4
7835
              STA left
              LDA data+1
7834
7937
              SBC #0
7838
              STA left+1
7839 .save_value
7840
              LDA left
7841
              CLC
              ADC #4
7842
7843
              STA current left
7844
              LDA left+1
7845
              ADC #0
7846
              STA current_left+1
7847
             LDA right
7848
             STA current right
7849
              SEC
7850
              SBC current left
7851
             BNE over
7852
             LDA right+1
             SBC current_left+1
7853
7854
             BNE over
7855
              JMP pull
7856 .over
7857
             LDA right+1
7858
              STA current_right+1
7859
              JSR swap
7860
              LDY #3
7861 .back
7862
             LDA (current_left),Y
7863
              STA key, Y
7864
              DEY
7865
              BPL back
7866 .adjust_right
             LDA current_right
7867
7868
              SEC
7869
              SBC #4
7870
              STA current_right
7871
              BCS compare hiright
7872
              DEC current right+1
7873 .compare_hiright
7874
              LDA current left+1
7875
              CMP current_right+1
              BCC not right
```

Program 12.11. PROCquick - implements a four-byte quicksort routine (cont.).

```
7877
               LDA current left
               CMP current_right
7878
7879
               BEO equal
7880 .not_right
               LDX #4
7881
7882
               LDY #0
7883
               SEC
7884 .compare_keyright
7885
               LDA (current_right),Y
7686
               SBC key. Y
7887
               INY
               DEX
7888
7889
               BNE compare_keyright
7890
               BVC no mask
7891
               EOR #%80
7892 .nc_mask
7893
               AND #%FF
7894
               BPL adjust right
7895
               DEY
7896 .exchange
7897
               LDA (current_right),Y
7898
               STA (current left).Y
7899
               DEY
               BPL exchange
7900
7901 .adjust_left
               LDA current_left
7902
               CLC
7903
7904
               ADC #4
7905
               STA current_left
7906
               BCC compare_lefthigh
7907
               INC current_left+1
7908 .compare_lefthigh
7909
               LDA current_left+1
               CMP current right+1
7910
               BCC not_left
7911
               LDA current left
7912
7913
               EMP current_right
7914
               BEO equal
7915 .not_left
               LDX #4
7916
               LDY #0
7917
7918
               SEC
7919 .compare_keyleft
               LDA key, Y
7920
               SBC (current_left), Y
7921
7922
               INY
               DEX
7923
7924
               BNE compare_keyleft
```

Program 12.11. PROCquick – implements a four-byte quicksort routine (cont.).

```
BVC no_mask_again
7925
               EOR #&80
7926
7927 .nc_mask_again
               AND #&FF
7928
               BPL adjust left
7929
               DEY
7930
7931 .exchange_over
               LDA (current_left), Y
7932
               STA (current_right), Y
7933
7934
               DEY
               BPL exchange over
7935
               BMI adjust_right
7936
7937 .equal
               LDY #3
7938
7939 .exc_loop
               LDA key, Y
7940
               STA (current_left), Y
7941
               DEY
7942
               BPL exc_loop
7943
               LDA current_left
7944
               SEC
7945
               SBC left
7946
               STA word
7947
               LDA current_left+1
7948
               SBC left+1
7949
               STA word+1
7950
               LDA right
7951
               SEC
7952
               SBC current_left
7953
               STA temp
7954
              LDA right+1
7955
               SBC current_left+1
7956
               STA temp+1
7957
               LDA word
7958
               SEC
7959
7960
               SBC temp
               LDA word+1
7961
               SBC temp+1
7962
7963
               BCC save_hi
7964 .save_lo
7965
               LDY #0
7966
               LDA left
7967
               STA (stack), Y
7969
               INY
7969
               LDA left+1
7970
               STA (stack),Y
7971
               INY
7972
               LDA current_left
```

Program 12.11. PROCquick - implements ■ four-byte quicksort routine (cont.).

```
STA (stack), Y
7973
7974
                STA left
7975
                TNY
7976
                LDA current_left+1
7977
                STA (stack), Y
                STA left+1
7978
                JMP update
7979
7980 .save_hi
                LDY #2
7981
7982
                LDA right
7983
                STA (stack), Y
7984
               INY
7985
                LDA right+1
               STA (stack).Y
7986
               LDY #0
7987
               LDA current_left
7988
7989
               STA (stack), Y
                STA right
7990
7991
               INY
7992
                LDA current_left+1
                STA (stack).Y
7993
7994
                STA right+1
7995 .update
                CLC
7996
7997
                LDA stack
                ADC #4
7998
7999
                STA stack
B000
                BCC update1
               INC stack+1
8001
8002 .update1
                JMP save_value
8003
8004 .pull
                LDA stack
8005
                SEC
8006
                SBC #softstk MOD 256
8007
8008
                BNE pull1
                LDA stack+1
8009
                SBC #softstk DIV 256
8010
                BNE pull1
8011
                RTS
8012
8013 .pull1
                LDA stack
8014
                SEC
8015
                SBC #4
8016
                STA stack
8017
                BCS pull2
8018
                DEC stack+1
8019
8020 .pull2
```

Program 12.11. PROCquick implements ■ four-byte quicksort routine (cont.).

```
8021
                LDY #3
8022 .pull3
B023
                LDA (stack), Y
                STA left, Y
8024
8025
                DEY
                BPL pull3
8026
8027
                JMP save value
8028 .swap
                LDA current_right
8029
                SEC
B030
                SBC current_left
8031
8032
                AND #%F8
8033
                STA middle
8034
                LDA current right+1
                SBC current left+1
8035
                STA middle+1
8036
                LSR middle+1
8037
                ROR middle
8038
8039
                LDA current_left
                CLC
8040
                ADC middle
8041
B042
                STA middle
8043
                LDA current left+1
8044
                ADC middle+1
                STA middle+1
B045
8046
                LDY #3
8047 .swap_loop
                LDA (current_left).Y
8048
2049
                STA word
8050
                LDA (middle), Y
8051
                STA (current_left),Y
8052
                LDA word
8053
                STA (middle), Y
8054
                DEY
8055
                BFL swap loop
8056
                RTS
8057 .key EQUD 0
8058 .word EQUW 0
8059 .temp EDUW 0
8060 ] NEXT
8061 ENDPROC
```

Program 12.11 PROCquick - implements a four-byte quicksort routine (cont.).

The main areas of operation of Program 12.11 are as follows:

Lines 7805 to 7808: Set up vector for software stack which will be used to hold pointers and data for future reference by the routine. Lines 7809 to 7813: Save base address of the integer array in 'left'.

162 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Lines 7814 to 7818: Seed integer into the 'current_left' position.

Lines 7819 to 7855: Seed next integer into 'current_right' position and test to see if they are equal. If both are equal, then pull pointers and data from stack and move onto next subsection.

Lines 7856 to 7860: If items are not equal perform the swap.

Lines 7861 to 7865: Then save key for future reference.

Lines 7866 to 7900: Compare key with integers to the right of it and perform swap if greater.

Lines 7901 to 7936: Compare key with integers to the left of it and perform swap if less than.

Linex 7937 to 8043: Place key back in 'current_left'.

Lines 7944 to 7963: Now save pointers of unsorted sections of integer array on software stack. Concentrate on smallest section first.

Lines 7964 to 8003: Routine to push pointers and data items onto software stack.

Lines 8004 to 8027: Routine to pull all pointers and data items off software stack.

Lines 8028 to 8055; Subroutine to perform the key integer swap,

Two sets of two variables are used by the assembler routine. The boundaries of the current section half being sorted are held in 'left' and 'right'. The current left- and right-hand numbers being tested with the key are held in 'current_left' and 'current_right' respectively.

The BASIC primer sets up an array of random integer values at &5000. After calling the quicksort, the sorted array is displayed (lines 20 to 90).

Program fact sheets

Program 12.1

Procedure title : PROCbin_search

Variables required : byte, list, pos, temp, addr

Line numbers : 7000 to 7046 Length : 57 bytes Zero page requirements : 5 bytes Registers changed : A. X. Y

Program 12.2

Procedure title : PROCordered_add

(also requires PROCbin_search

: byte, list, pos, temp, addr Variables required

: 7100 to 7194 Line numbers : 115 bytes Length Zero page requirements : 5 bytes : A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.3

Procedure title : PROCordered_del

(also requires PROCbin_search)

Variables required : byte, list, pos, temp, addr

: 7200 to 7276 Line numbers : 87 bytes Length Zero page requirements : 5 bytes : A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.4

Procedure title : PROCmax_min_list : min, max, list, addr Variables required Line numbers : 7300 to 7330 : 36 bytes Length Zero page requirements : 4 bytes

: A, X, Y

Program 12.5

Registers changed

: PROCunordered_del Procedure title

Variables required ; byte, list, addr : 7400 to 7431 Line numbers : 36 bytes Length Zero page requirements : 3 bytes

: A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.6

Procedure title : PROCbyte_array : subscript, array, addr Variables required

Line numbers : 7500 to 7519 Length : 18 bytes Zero page requirements: 3 bytes Registers changed : A, Y

Program 12.7

: PROCtwodim_byte Procedure title

164 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Variables required : subscript1, subscript2, sub_size.

temp, array, addr

Line numbers : 7530 to 7577 Length : 68 bytes Zero page requirements : 10 bytes

: A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.8

Procedure title : PROCword_array Variables required : subscript, array, addr

Line numbers : 7600 to 7628 Length : 34 bytes Zero page requirements: 3 bytes Registers changed : A. X. Y

Program 12.9

Procedure title : PROCsort32

: one, two, vector, count, addr Variables required

Line numbers : 7700 to 7761 Length : 86 bytes Zero page requirements : 8 bytes : A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.10

: PROCnew_list Procedure title

Variables required ; source, new, step, addr

Line numbers : 7770 to 7790 : 25 bytes Length Zero page requirements: 1 byte : A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 12.11

Procedure title : PROCquick

: softstk. left, right, current_left, Variables required current_right, stack, middle, data

Line numbers : 7800 to 8061 Length : 437 bytes Zero page requirements : 14 bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

Chapter Thirteen Communication

An important part of good software is good communication between the program and the user. Excellent software is very often degraded because the writer has not made any attempt to make the program user-friendly by presenting instructions neatly onto the screen and using sensible keys for inputting information. This chapter provides some short but important procedures that will enable the programmer both to neaten up screen presentation and have the program input data with minimal fuss. Most programs are based around the excellent set of operating system commands, thus reducing the amount of coding. The routines included are:

Program 13.1 : Perform a CLS

Program 13.2: Perform VPOS and POS.

Program 13.3: Perform SPC.

Program 13.4 : Perform STRING\$.

Program 13.5 : Perform TAB (X).

Program 13.6: Perform TAB (X,Y).

Program 13.7: Perform GET.

Program 13.8: Perform INKEY,

Program 13.9: Super quick key test.

Program 13.10: Read line.

Program 13.11: Read a VDU definition.

Program 13.12: Hexadecimal to ASCII.

Program 13.13: Packed BCD to ASCII.

Program 13.14: ASCH to packed BCD.

Onto the screen

The first six programs presented here deal with formatting text on the screen. Program 13.1 performs a simple CLS to clear the screen, by printing a control code 12 through OSWRCH.

Knowing where the cursor is at a particular time is another useful function to perform. In BASIC, the POS and VPOS functions return

```
10 REM*** CLEAR SCREEN -CLS ***
  20 PROCcls (&COO)
  30 PRINT"PRESS ■ KEY TO CLEAR SCREEN"
  40 A=GET
  50 CALL &COO
  60 END
  70 :
8000 DEF PROCcis (addr)
8001 P%=addr
8002 E
8003 .clear_screen
8004
                    LDA #12
8005
                    JSR &FFEE
8006
                    RTS
8007 J
8008 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.1. PROCcis - performs CLS.

the horizontal (X axis) and vertical (Y axis) components of the cursor. These two functions have a direct equivalent within the MOS, an OSBYTE &86 call. Program 13.2 shows that the X and Y coordinates of the cursor are returned in the respective index registers which can be saved for evaluation.

```
10 REM *** DO POS % VPOS ***
  20 PROCeurson (&70,&71,&800)
  30 CLS
  40 PRINTTAB(10,10):
  50 CALLcursor
  60 PRINT' "Cursor positions were :"
  70 PRINT"POS = ":?%70
  80 PRINT"VPOS= ":7%71
  70 END
 100 ±
8010 DEF PROCeursor (pos, vpos, addr)
8011 P%=&C00
8012 COPT 2
8013 .cursor
8014
                 LDA #886
8015
                 JSR %FFF4
                 STX pos
8016
8017
                 STY vpos
B018
                 RTS
8019 ]
8020 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.2. PROCcursor - returns the X,Y coordinates of the text cursor.

Program 13.3 imitates the BASIC command SPC, to print a specified number of spaces from the current cursor position. The number of spaces to be printed should be passed into the procedure via the variable 'spc'. At assembly time, this variable is treated as an immediate value being loaded directly into the X register to act as a simple loop control. Prior to entering 'loop', the accumulator is loaded with 32, the ASCII code of a space, and the required number is printed.

```
10 REM *** DO MACHINE CODE SPC ***
  20 CLS
  30 INPUT"How many spaces ?"spc
  40 PROCspace (spc, %C00)
  50 CALL space
  60 END
  70 s
8030 DEF PROCspace (spc,addr)
8031 P%=addr
8032 IOPT 2
8033 .space
8034
                LDX
                     #spc
8035
                LDA
                      #32
8036 .loop
8037
                JSR &FFEE
8038
                DEX
8039
                BNE loop
8040
                RTS
8041 1
8042 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.3. PROCspace - performs SPC.

STRING\$ is a BASIC command that allows a specified number of the same string to be printed. This can result in a great saving of memory space. For example, it is much neater to print 40 asterisks using

PRINT STRING\$ (40, "*")

rather than enclosing 40 asterisks inside quotes or from a machine code point of view in an ASCII data table. Program 13.4 emulates this command by printing a string located at 'buffer', 'num' number of times.

The program commences by loading the Y register with the 'num' count (line 8055) and then setting the X register to zero (line 8057), which is to be used as an absolute index into 'buffer'. The get and display loop is embodied in lines 8058 to 8063. Each character is

```
10 REM *** DO STRING$ ***
  20 CLS
  30 INPUT"Enter your string : "$%C50
  40 INPUT"How many times : "num
  50 PRODstring (&C50, num, &C00)
  60 CALL string
  70 END
  B0 :
8050 DEF PROCetting (buffer, num, addr)
8051 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
8052 P%=addr
2053 [OPT pass
9054 .string
2055
               LDY #num
9056 .count
8057
               LDX #0
8058 .next_chr
8059
               LDA buffer.X
               JSR &FFE3
8040
8061
               INX
8062
               EMP #13
2609
              BNE next_chr
8064
               DEY
2065
               BNE count
9044
               RTS
B067 1
8048 NEXT
8069 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.4 PROCstring - performs STRING\$

extracted from 'buffer' and printed in turn until a carriage return has been printed. The Y register is decremented and the 'count' loop repeated until it reaches zero. Note that in the code the carriage return at the end of the string (put there by BASIC's INPUT statement - line 30) is printed, so that each string occupies a new line rather than being printed continuously across the screen. The CMP #13 test could be performed earlier so that the program exists before issuing a return if so required.

Positioning text on the screen is performed using the TAB function. There are two bytes of TAB, namely TAB(X) and TAB(X,Y). The simplest way to perform a TAB(X) is to print the move cursor right code, ASCII 9, the required number of times. Program 13.5 details the assembler, the required value of X passing into the procedure through 'xpos'. Once again, a simple loop is used printing the code 9 through OSWRCH until the X register has been decremented to zero. It is worth bearing in mind that this routine is in

```
10 REM *** DO TAB(X) ***
  20 CLS
  30 INPUT"Number of tabs : "xpos
  40 PROCtabs (xpos, &COO)
  50 CLS
  60 CALL tabx
  70 PRINT" * " ?
  80 PRINT" # marks the TAB position"
  90 END
 100 m
8080 DEF PROCtabx (xpos,addr)
8081 P%=addr
8082 [DPT 2
8083 .tabx
             LDA #9
8084
             LDX #xpos
8085
8086 .xtab
              JSR &FFEE
9087
             DEX
8088
              BNE xtab
2027
              RTS
8090
2091 I
8092 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.5. PROCtabx - performs TAB(X).

fact different from the one given in Program 13.3 as it has no effect on any text the cursor passes over. Only the cursor is moved and no spaces are output as in the former program.

TAB(X,Y) is performed through OSWRCH using the driver code 31 followed by first the X and then the Y coordinate to tab to. Program 13.6 uses immediate addressing to pass the two TAB parameters into the assembler via 'xpos' and 'ypos'.

```
10 REM *** DO TAB(X,Y) ***
  20 CLS
  30 INPUT"Tab X position : "xpos
  40 INPUT"Tab Y position : "ypos
  50 PROCtabky (xpos, ypos, &COO)
  60 CLS
  70 CALL tabxy
  80 PRINT"#"?
  90 PRINT" # marks the TAB position"
 100 END
 110 :
8100 DEF FROCtabxy (xpos, ypos, addr)
8101 P%=addr
8102 [SPT 2
```

Program 13.6. PROCtabxy - performs TAB(X,Y).

```
B103 .tabxv
8104
                 LDA #31
8105
                 JSR &FFEE
8106
                LDA #xpos
8107
                 JSR &FFEE
8108
                LDA #ypcs
8107
                 JSR &FFEE
8110
                 RTS
B111 7
8112 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.6. PROCtabxy - performs TAB(X,Y) (cont.).

The key to detection

I doubt if there are many programs that do not require some sort of interaction from the user at the keyboard, whether it be a simple 'press key to continue' affair or more complex data input. Whatever it is, the need to perform the task efficiently and correctly is important.

A simple GET type keyboard read can be performed by calling OSRDCH at &FFE0 directly (see Program 13.7). This call waits for a key to be pressed and returns with its ASCII value in the accumulator. However, when using this call it is important to test to see if the ESCAPE key was the key pressed. This can be performed simply by comparing the accumulator contents with &1B (line 8126). If the key was pressed then it *must* be acknowledged with an OSBYTE &7E call (lines 8128 to 8129) otherwise the MOS will hang up or do crazy things!

```
10 REM ## TEST FOR KEY ##
  20 CLS
  30 PRINT"Press key to test for";
  40 chr$=GET$
  50 chr=ASC(chr$)
  60 PROCeetkey(chr, &COO)
  70 PRINT''"Press ";chr$;" to end";
  80 CALL getstring
  90 PRINT''' Finished!"
 100 END
 110 :
B120 DEF PRDCgetkey (chr,addr)
8121 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
8122 P%=addr
8123 COPT pass
8124
      .getstring
      Program 13.7. PROCgetkey - performs GET.
```

```
8125
                   JSR &FFE0
                   CMP #&1B
8126
8127
                   BNE no escape
                   LDA #&7E
8128
8129
                   JSR &FFF4
8130 .no_escape
8131
                   CMP #chr
8132
                   BNE getstring
                   RTS
8133
8134 J
0135 NEXT
8136 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.7. PROCgetkey - performs GET (cont.).

Using OSBYTE &81, an INKEY timed input can be performed. The index registers are used to hold the wait period which is specified in centiseconds. Program 13.8 shows how it is set up in the procedure PROCinkey. Prior to the actual OSBYTE call an *FX15,1 is

```
REM *** DO MACHINE CODE INKEY ***
  20 PRODinkey (1000.%70.%000)
  30 CLS
  40 PRINT"Press key within time limit
  50 CALL inkey
  60 PRINT"Key pressed was :":CHR$(7%70
3
  70 END
  80 :
9140 DEF FROCinkey (wait, result, addr)
8141 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
8142 P%=addr
8143 [OPT pass
8144 .inkey
8145
                 LDA #15
                 LDX #1
8146
                 LDY #0
B147
                 JSR &FFF4
8148
B147
                 LDA #&81
8150
                 LDX #wait MOD 256
8151
                 LDY #wait DIV 256
8152
                 JSR &FFF4
                 CPY #&1B
8153
B154
                 BNE no escape
                 LDA #%7E
8155
                 JSR &FFF4
8156
```

Program 13.8. PROCinkey - performs INKEY.

```
8157 .no_escape

9158 STX result

8159 RTS

8160 J

8161 NEXT

8162 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.8. PROCinkey - performs INKEY (cont.).

performed to flush all input buffers (lines 8145 to 8148). The wait period is passed into the assembler via the variable 'wait', the high and low bytes are loaded into the respective registers using the MOD and DIV operators (lines 8149 to 8152). As with the previous procedure, the ESCAPE key should be tested for and acknowledged with the appropriate call if need be (lines 8153 to 8156). Note that in this instance the escape code is returned in the Y register. If a key is detected in the allotted time period it is returned from OSBYTE in the X register and both the Y register and carry flag are clear. If no character is detected within the time period, Y returns containing &FF and the carry is set.

OSBYTE &81 can also be used to perform a single keyboard scan if it is called with the Y register holding &FF and the X register the negative INKEY value.

The demonstration program performs an INKEY (1000) equivalent, which basically causes the MOS to look at the keyboard for 10 seconds or until a key is pressed.

Both of the above two routines suffer from one drawback. They are slow! Well, in machine code terms they are. Consider that the fastest MOS-based routine, using OSBYTE &81 with X holding the negative inkey value will take at least 300 cycles and anything up to 1200 cycles. Program 13.9 does the whole scan in a mere 12 cycles and what's more it can test for two keys being pressed at once!

The code assembled by PROCkeytest looks at locations &EC and &ED. If a key is pressed at any time then the MOS places zero into &ED and &EC contains the key's number. The actual numbers stored by the MOS are internal key numbers +128. For almost all purposes the internal key numbers are the negative INKEY numbers made positive and then decremented by one. For example, C is equal to INKEY(-83) so its internal number is calculated as ABS(-83)-1 or 83-1=82. Testing for C using 'keytest' therefore requires a test for 82+128=210.

If two keys are pressed almost simultaneously then &ED contains the number of the first key pressed and &EC the second key. If no keys are detected then both these bytes are zero.

```
10 REM *** QUICK TEST FOR KEY ***
  20 PROCkeytest (%900)
  30 VDU15
  40 CALL start
  50 END
  60 s
9300 DEFPROCKeytest (addr)
8301 FOR pass=0 TO 2 STEP 2
8302 P%=addr
8303 E
8304
               OPT pass
8305 .start
               LDA&ED
B306
8307
               BEQ check EC
               JSR valid_key
8028
               BEG check_EC
8309
9310
               JSR&FFEE
8311 .check_EC
8312
               LDA$.EC
               BEQ start
8313
8314
               JSR valid_key
8315
               BEO start
               JSR&FFEE
8316
               JMP start
2317
8318 .valid_key
               CMP#&FO
8319
8320
               BNE next1
8321
               PLA
8322
              PLA
8323
               LDA#15
8324
               JSR&FFF4
8325
               RTS
8326 .next1
8327
               CMP#&E1
8328
               BNE next2
8329
               LDA#&5A
8330
               RT5
8331 .next2
8332
               CMP#%C2
8333
               BNE next3
8334
               LDA#%58
8335
               RTS
8336 .next3
8337
               CMP#&DZ
8338
               BNE next4
8339
               LPA#&43
8340
              RTS
8341 .next4
```

Program 13.9. PROCkeytest - a 12-cycle key test.

```
CMP#SEZ
8342
                BNE mext5
8343
                LDA#&E&
9344
8345
                RTS
8346 Inext5
P347
                LDA#O
E348
                RTS
BI49 ]
8050 NEXT
PKS1 ENDEROC
```

Program 13.9 PROCkeytest - a 12-cycle key test (cont.).

As it stands, the routine has been set up to look for Z, X, C, V and ESCAPE. The hex begins by peeking &ED. If this is zero then &EC can be tested straightaway so the branch to 'check_EC' is performed (lines 8306 to 8307). The subroutine 'valid_key' tests for each of the above keys. The first tested is ESCAPE, code &F0 (line 8319). If it is detected then the RTS address is pulled from the stack and the MOS entered with 15 in the accumulator to handle the ESCAPE. The following bytes then look for each key in turn. The codes for each are:

```
&E1 = Z
&C2 = X
&D2 = C
&E3 = V
```

If any of these compare, the letter is printed out. The 'check_EC' routine works exactly the same.

If you run the program and then press either the Z, X, C, or V keys then you'll see just how fast this key test routine is. The screen half fills with letters before you can lift your finger off the key! Finally, I should point out that this method is not condoned by Acorn as it is MOS-dependent. It will work on OS 1.0 and OS 1.2 but I haven't tried it on OS 0.1 so it may not work if you are using this version of MOS.

The GET single key type routines could be employed to read in a string of characters, placing each one into a defined buffer until a set number of characters is reached or a return character detected. This does involve some extra coding, though, as a loop and buffer would need to be implemented. A neater way is to use the MOS line input routine OSWORD &00. This is a very useful call as it allows a number of parameters to be specified regarding the characters being input, Figure 13.1 details the parameter block. The first two bytes contain the address of the input buffer, the second byte the maximum

```
XY+0 : LSB of input buffer address
XY+1 : MSB of input buffer address
XY+2 : Maximum number of characters
XY+3 : Minimum ASCII value of character acceptable
XY+4 : Maximum ASCII value of character acceptable
```

Fig. 13.1. OSWORD &00 parameter block.

number of characters to be placed in the buffer, while the last two bytes determine the maximum and minimum acceptable ASCII characters that will be accepted and placed in the buffer!

This OSWORD call does have one major disadvantage, though. Although only characters in the specified ASCII range will be placed into the buffer, any other characters presses will be echoed to the screen even though they are not deposited in the buffer.

Program 13.10 provides a suitable procedure. The parameter

```
10 REM ## READ LINE FROM INPUT ##
   20 PROCincutline(&70,&COO,10.ASC"A".
ASC"Z", &4000)
      CALL %4000
   30
   40 PRINT$%E00
   50
      END
8170 DEF PROCinputline(block, B%, L%, max
.min.addr)
 8171 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP3
8172 P%=addr
      [OPT pass
8173
                 LDA #8% MOD 256
2174
8175
                 STA block
8176
                 LDA #B% DIV 256
8177
                 STA block+1
2178
                 LDA #L%
8179
                 STA block+2
0819
                 LDA #max
                 STA block+3
B181
8192
                 LDA #min
                 STA block+4
8183
8184
                 LDA #0
8185
                 LDX #block MOD 256
8186
                 LDY #block DIV 256
8197
                 JSR &FFF1
8188
                 RTS
8189
       1
8190
       NEXT
8191
       ENDPROC
```

Program 13.10. PROCinputline - input a line of text.

block address for the call is defined in 'block' while B% determines the input line buffer location; L% the number of characters acceptable, i.e. the buffer's maximum length; and 'max', 'min' the acceptable character range.

Program 13.11 will read the bit map definition of any ASCII or defined VDU character. OSWORD &0A performs the task and all that is required prior to the read is to define a nine-byte parameter block, 'block' in the program. The ASCII code of the character to be read should be located in the first byte of the parameter block and on return the following eight bytes contain the character's definition starting with the top row of the character.

```
10 REM **READ VDU CHR DEFINITION**
   20 CLS
   30 PRINT"PRESS A KEY TO DISLAY ITS DE
FINITION":
   40 chrs=GETs
   50 chr=ASC(chr$)
   60 PROCread [chr (&70.chr. &4000)
   70 CALL $4000
   80 CLS
   90 PRINT"THE DEFINITION OF ";chr$;" I
  100 FOR N=&71 TO &78:PRINT?N:NEXT
  110 END
 8200 DEF PROCread_chr(block,chr,addr%)
8201 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
 8202 F%=addr%
8203 COPT pass
                   LDA #chr
8204
8205
                   STA block
8206
                   LDA #10
                   LDX #block MOD 256
8207
                   LDY #block DIV 256
8208
8209
                   JSR &FFF1
8210
                   RTS
8211 ]
8212 NEXT
8213 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.11. PROCread_chr - reads the eight-byte definition of any character.

A simple change

The final three programs provide some simple conversion routines.

Program 13.12 will convert the hexadecimal value at 'byte' and print it to the screen as two ASCII hex bytes. Thus if 'byte' held &FF then the letters F and F will be printed. The program works as follows. After loading the byte for conversion into the accumulator, the logical AND ensures that only the lowest four bits are set (lines 8233 to 8234). After setting the decimal flag, the addition of &90 to binary values 0 to 9 will result in a value of &90 to &99 with the carry flag clear. A further addition of &40 will convert these characters to values in the range &30 to &39 with the carry set. Remember that decimal addition is in operation so that adding 1 to &99 will give a result of &00 rather than &9A.

```
10 REM *** SIMPLE HEX TO ASCII ***
  20 PROChex_asc(&70,&71,&72,&C00)
  30 ?&70=255
  40 CALL &COO
  50 PRINT'''
  60 PRINTCHR$ (?&71); CHR$ (?&72)
  70 END
  80 :
8230 DEF PROChex_asc(byte,high,low,addr
8231 P%=addr
8232 [
8233
                LDA byte
8234
                AND #15
6235
                SED
8236
                CLC
8237
                ADC #&90
8238
                ADC #&40
8239
                CLD
8240
                STA 10W
8241
                LDA byte
8242
                LSR A
8243
                LSR A
8244
                LSR M
8245
                LSR A
8246
                SED
8247
                CLC
8248
                ADC #890
8249
                ADC #840
8250
                CLD
8251
                STA high
8252
                RTS
8253 3
8254 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.12. PROChex_asc - convert a hexadecimal number into two ASCII values

Adding &90 to the binary values &A to &F results in a byte in the range &00 to &05 with the carry set. A further addition of &40 (plus the set carry) converts this to values &41 to &46, the ASCII codes for the letters A to F.

The byte is then saved and the next four bits treated likewise after shifting them into the lower nibble position with four logical shifts. Both ASCII codes are stored at 'high' and 'low' for future reference. If you wish not to save the two results but to print them directly then remember that the high nibble must be treated first and then the low nibble as the digits are printed, most significant first, on the screen.

Program 13.13 converts macked BCD digit into its component ASCII codes. To perform the conversion the byte must first be transformed into its two component nibbles, which should be placed in the low nibble position before having bit 5 forced to 1 using ORA #&30. The high nibble is treated first. After loading the packed byte from 'bcd' it is pushed onto the hardware stack for future reference. The high nibble is then shifted into the low nibble position (lines 8263)

```
10 REM *** PACKED BCD TO ASCII ***
  20 PROCECT ascii(&70,&71,&72,&C00)
  30 7&70=&12
  40 CALL %C00
  45 PRINT'
  50 PRINT CHR$(?&72): CHR$(?&71)
  60 END
  70 :
8260 DEF PROChed_ascil(bcd.low,high,add
8261 P%=addr
8262 E
8263
               LDA bcd
8264
               PHA
8265
               LSR A
8266
               LSR A
8267
               LSR A
               LSR A
8268
8269
               DRA #830
8270
               STA high
               PLA
8271
8272
               AND #15
               DRA #&30
8273
8274
               STA low
B275
               RTS
8276 ]
8277 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.13. PROCbcd_ascii – converts a packed BCD byte into two ASCII values.

to 8268). Bit 5 is then forced and the ASCII character code placed in 'high' - it could at this point be printed using JSR &FFEE instead. The stack is pulled and the high nibble masked out with an AND (lines 8271 to 8272). Bit 5 is forced and the result placed in 'low' (lines 8273 to 8274).

Performing the reverse conversion, two ASCII digits to packed BCD, involves reversing the procedure as depicted in Program 13.14. The high digit is extracted from 'high' shifted right so that bit 5 is lost and only the binary bits remain. This byte is pushed onto the hardware stack. The 'low' digit is loaded into the accumulator, the low nibble preserved, and the stack pointer copied into the X register (lines 8289 to 8291). The two digits have now been stripped of bit 5, and all that is now required is to merge them together. This is done by logically ORing the two together (lines 8292). The X register is incremented and copied back into the stack pointer thus 'popping' the byte from the stack. Finally the result is placed at 'bcd'.

```
10 REM *** ASCII TO PACKED BCD ***
  20 PROCasc_bcd(&70,&71,&72,&000)
 30 ?&70=ASC("6")
  40 ?&71=ASC("9")
 50 CALL &COO
  60 PRINT ?% 72
 70 END
 80 :
8290 DEF PROCasc_bcd(high,low,bcd,addr)
8281 P%=addr
8282 [
8283
                LDA high
B284
                ASL A
B285
                ASL A
8286
                ASL A
8287
                ASL A
8298
                PHA
8289
                LDA 10W
8290
                AND #15
8291
                TSX
8292
                ORA &101.X
B293
                INX
8294
                TXS
8295
                STA bcd
9296
                RTS
8297 3
8298 ENDPROC
```

Program 13.14. PROCasc_bcd - converts two ASCII values into a packed BCD byte.

Program fact sheets

Program 13.1

Procedure title : PROCcls Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 8000 to 8008

Length : 6 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A

Program 13.2

Procedure title : PROCcursor
Variables required : pos, vpos, addr
Line numbers : 8010 to 8020
Length : 10 bytes
Zero page requirements : 2 bytes
Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 13.3

Procedure title : PROCspace
Variables required : spc, addr
Line numbers : 8030 to 8042
Length : 11 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A, X

Program 13.4

Procedure title : PROCstring
Variables required : buffer, num, addr
Line numbers : 8050 to 8069
Length : 19 bytes
Zero page requirements : none

: A, X, Y

Program 13.5

Registers changed

Procedure title : PROCtabx
Variables required : xpos, addr
Line numbers : 8080 to 8092
Length : 17 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A, X

Program 13.6

Procedure title : PROCtabxy : xpos, ypos, addr Variables required Line numbers : 8100 to 8112 : 16 bytes Length Zero page requirements: none Registers changed : A

Program 13.7

Procedure title : PROCgetkey Variables required : chr, addr : 8120 to 8136 Line numbers Length : 17 bytes Zero page requirements: none Registers changed

Program 13.8

Procedure title : PROCinkey : wait, result, addr Variables required Line numbers : 8150 to 8162 Length : 31 bytes Zero page requirements: 1 byte : A, X, Y Registers changed

Program 13.9

Procedure title : PROCkeytest

Variables required : addr

: 8300 to 8351 Line numbers : 69 bytes Length Zero page requirements: none : A Registers changed

Program 13.10

Procedure title : PROCinputline

Variables required : block, B\%, L\%, max, min, addr

Line numbers : 8170 to 8191 Length : 26 bytes Zero page requirements: 5 bytes Registers changed : A, X, Y

182 The BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Program 13.11

: PROCread_chr Procedure title Variables required : block, chr, addr Line numbers : 8200 to 8213 Length ; 14 bytes Zero page requirements: 9 bytes : A, X, Y

Program 13.12

Registers changed

: PROChex_asc Procedure title

Variables required : byte, high, low, addr

: 8230 to 8254 Line numbers : 29 bytes Length

: A Registers changed

Zero page requirements: 3 bytes

Program 13.13

Procedure title : PROCbcd_ascii : bcd, low, high, addr Variables required

Line numbers : 8260 to 8277 : 19 bytes Length Zero page requirements: 3 bytes

Registers changed : A

Program 13.14

: PROCasc_bcd Procedure title : high, low, bcd, addr Variables required

: 8280 to 8289 Line numbers : 20 bytes Length Zero page requirements: 3 bytes : A. X Registers changed

Chapter Fourteen Odd One Out

This final chapter in the Portfolio draws together eight programs that offer wariety of functions. The programs are:

Program 14.1: Find highest IRQ.

Program 14.2: Timer 1 delay.

Program 14.3: Timer 2 delay.

Program 14.4: One second delay.

Program 14.5: Save all processor registers.

Program 14.6: Restore all processor registers.

Program 14.7: Two-byte incrementing counter.

Program 14.8: Two-byte decrementing counter.

Interrupt polling

Program 14.1 is not a complete routine as it stands as it expects extra code, written by the user, to be tagged onto it. Basically it is an interrupt polling sequence for the User VIA, capable of identifying the highest priority interrupt request on any one of the seven lines capable of having an IRQ.

In order to know which interrupt servicing routine to call, the source of the IRQ must be determined. To find this out, bit 7 of the Interrupt Flag Register (IFR7) must be tested. If this bit is set then an IRQ has been issued. The IFR is read using an OSBYTE &96 call to read Sheila. As the IFR occupies location &6D in Sheila this value is placed in the X register. After the call, the Y register contains the byte just read, which is transferred into the accumulator. If bit 7 is clear the branch to 'next_device' will be executed (lines 9006 to 9010).

What is required now is to read the Interrupt Enable Register (IER) at Sheila &6E, as a set bit in this register will give the identity of the IRQ. This is performed by lines 9012 to 9015. For an interrupt to

```
10 REM *** FIND HIGHEST IRG ***
  20 REM ***needs extra user coding***
 30 REM **to run sequence correctly**
 40 :
9000 DEF PROChighestIRO (temp, addr)
9001 FOR pass=0 TD 3 STEP 3
9002 P%=addr
9003 E
9004
              CPT pass
9005 .find IRQ
              LDA #896
9006
7007
              LDX #8:5D
9008
              JSR %FFF4
9009
               TYA
             BPL next_device
9010
9011
              PHA
              LDA #8.96
9012
              LDX #86E
9013
             JSR &FFF4
9014
7015
              STY temp
9016
              PLA
9017
              AND temp
9018
              ASL A
9019
              BMI timer1
9020
              ASL A
              BMI timer2
9021
9022
              ASL A
              BMI cbi
9023
              ASL |
9024
9025
              BMI cb2
9026
              ASL A
              BMI shift reg
9027
9028
              ASL A
9029
              BMI cal
9030
               ASL A
9031
              BMI ca2
               JMP error
9032
9033 .timer 1
              JMP Tiservice
9034
9035 .timer2
9036
               JMP T2service
9037 .cb1
               JMP cb1service
9038
9039 .cb2
               JMP cb2service
9040
9041 .shift_reg
               JMP srservice
9042
9043 .cai
```

Program 14.1. PROChighestIRQ - locates the highest priority interrupt.

```
9044 JMP caiservice
9045 .ca2
9046 JMP ca2service
9047 .error
9048 \ error service routine here
9049 .next_device
9050 \ more polling here
9051 J
9052 NEXT
9053 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.1. PROChighestIRQ - locates the highest priority interrupt (cont.).

have occurred, the corresponding bits in the IFR and IER must have been set; to determine the actual bit these two bytes are logically ANDed together to preserve the set bit (line 9015 to 9016). Now all that is required is to shift the byte to condition the negative flag. Setting the negative flag will determine that the bit just shifted was the line-associated bit that caused the IRQ and thus the BMI for that test will proceed.

In Program 14.1 I have used a left to right priority system, so that bit 6 has a greater priority than bit 5. Therefore an interrupt on T1 interrupt enable has a greater priority than an interrupt on T2 and so forth. You can arrange your own priorities to suit, though the test procedure might not be a simple shift and branch sequence, and more complex coding might be required.

A timed delay

Both the timers in the User VIA can be used to produce delays. Program 14.2 uses Timer I to provide one I-millisecond delay using it

```
10 REM *** MILLISECOND DELAY USING T1

***

20 PROCtimerone_delay (%C00)

30 CALL millisec1

40 END

50:

9060 DEF PROCtimerone_delay (addr)

9061 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3

9062 P%=addr

9063 C

9064 OPT pass

9065 .millisec1
```

Program 14.2. PROCtimerone_delay - a one millisecond delay using Timer 1.

```
LDA #897
9066
9067
                LDX #86B
9068
                LDY #0
                JSR &FFF4
9069
9070
               LDX #&64
9071
                LDY #%EB
                JSR &FFF4
9072
9073
               LDX #8.65
9074
                LDY #3
                JSR &FFF4
9075
                LDA #840
9076
9077 .loop
                BIT &FE6D
9078
9079
                BEG loop
9080
               LDA &FE64
9081
                RTS
9082 1
9083 NEXT
9084 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.2. PROCtimerone_delay - a one millisecond delay using Timer 1 (cont.).

in its one-shot mode of operation. To place T1 into this mode, zero must be written to the Auxillary Control Register at Sheila &6B. Next the delay must be loaded into the latches. One millisecond corresponds to 1000 cycles, however, and it should be remembered that T1 has an operating overhead of 1.5 cycles, so the actual value loaded into the latches must be the actual value minus 2. Thus, 998 is to be deposited into the T1 latches. Lines 9070 to 9075 perform this using the hex equivalent &3E8; writing to the msb latch starts the timer running.

On timing out, the T1 bit in the IFR will be set. To test for this, &40, is loaded into the accumulator and the IFR tested using the BIT operation. This small loop (lines 9077 to 9079) continues until the BEQ fails, denoting time out. The T1 flag is then cleared by reading the latch (line 9080).

Program 14.3 performs a similar delay using Timer 2. Only the addresses in the program and the bit mask change.

```
10 REM *** MILLISECOND DELAY USING T2

***

20 PROCtimertwo_delay (%COO)

30 CALL millisec

40 END

50 :

9100 DEF PROCtimertwo_delay (addr)

9101 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
```

Program 14.3. PROCtimertwo_delay - ■ one millisecond delay using Timer 2.

```
9102 P%=addr
9103 E
9104
               OPT pass
9105 .millisec
9106
               LDA #&97
9107
              LDX #&6B
9108
              LDY #0
9109
               JSR &FFF4
9110
               LDX #&68
9111
              LDY #&E8
9112
              JSR &FFF4
9113
              LDX #&69
9114
              LDY #3
9115
              JSR &FFF4
9116
              LDA #&20
9117 .loop
9118
               BIT &FE6D
9119
              BEQ 1000
9120
               LDA &FE68
9121
              RTS
9122 ]
9123 NEXT
9124 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.3. PROCtimertwo_delay - a one millisecond delay using Timer 2 (cont.).

The timers are fine for providing very short delay loops but for substantial delays they are not really suitable. Program 14.4 will provide a 1-second delay. It does this by just executing a series of timed loops. As the clock on the Beeb operates at 2MHz, the delay loop need only count out 2000000 cycles to create the delay.

```
10 REM *** 1.0 SECOND DELAY ***
   20 PROCdelay (&COO)
   30 INPUT"How many seconds delay 7: "w
ait
   40 TIME=0
   50 FOR loop=1 TO wait
   60 SALL &C00
   70 NEXT
  80 time%=TIME
   90 time%=(time%/100)
  100 PRINT"Time taken was :";time%;
  110 PRINT" second(s)"
  120 END
  130 :
9130 DEF PROCdelay (addr)
9131 FOR PASS=0 TO 3 STEP 3
```

Program 14.4. PROCdelay - a one second delay loop.

```
9132 P%=addf
9133 E
              OPT PASS
9134
             PHP
9135
             PHA
9136
              TXA
9137
             PHA
9138
              TYA
9139
             PHA
9140
              LDY cuter
9141 .loop1
9142
              TYA
9143
              FHA
9144
              LDX inner
9145 .loop2
              LDY #5
9146
9147 .loop3
              DEY
9148
9149
             BNE loop3
9150
              DEX
             BNE 100p2
7151
9152
              LDY #2
9153 .loop4
9154
              DEY
              BNE 100p4
9155
9156
             PLA
              TAY
9157
7158
             DEY
             BNE 10001
9159
             LDY fine
9160
9161 .lcop5
              DEY
9162
9163
             BNE 10005
9164
              PLA
9165
             TAY
              PLA
9166
              TAX
9167
7168
             PLA
             PLP
9169
9170
             RTS
9171 .outer
              EQUB 251
9172
9173 .inner
9174
              EQUB 0
9175 .fine
9176
              EQUB 197
9177 ]
9178 NEXT
9179 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.4. PROCdelay - mone second delay loop (cont.).

The main loop counter is provided by 'outer' while the finer inner loop counter is 'inner'. The program commences by pushing all processor registers onto the stack thus preserving their status on return. This process takes 16 cycles (lines 9134 to 9139). The Y register is then loaded with 'outer' (4 cycles line 9140) and 'loop1' entered. This major outer loop has a smaller loop within it between lines 9145 and 9151 which takes total of 256*31-1 cycles or 7935 cycles to execute. As the outer 'loop1' is controlled by the contents of the Y register, 251, the main loop between lines 9141 and 9159 takes 251*7964-1 or 1998963 cycles to run. In both cases, the 1 is needed because the final branch does not take place and therefore only uses 2 cycles and not the 3 allowed in the calculation.

The final 'fine' loop plus restoring the registers add a further 30+984 (the loop in lines 9162 to 9163) cycles to the overall delay. The total delay provided by the loop is therefore calculated as 1998963 + 16 + 4 + 30 + 984 = 1999997 cycles. This is obviously three cycles short of the desired delay, which doesn't really bear thinking about!

The BASIC demo asks how long a delay you would like. Because there is an overhead in the BASIC operations, don't be too surprised if you enter 20 in response to the prompt and get an answer of 23 seconds back. The extra three seconds were created by the BASIC interpreter working through the program!

Now a question. Add the following line to the program

25 CLS

and run it. Why does it seem to work twice as quick? Don't expect the answer; I'm still trying to fathom it out for myself!

```
10 REM#SAVE ALL PROCESSOR REGISTERS#
  20 REM#DOES NOT HAVE RTS MUST BE
  30 REMAUSED DIRECTLY IN CODE.
  40 :
9200 DEF PROCoush all (addr)
9201 P%=addr
9202 I OPT 2
9203 .pushall
9204
                 PHP
9205
                 PHA
9206
                 TXA
9207
                 PHA
9208
                 TYA
9209
                 PHA
9210 3
9211 ENDFROC
```

Program 14.5. PROCpush_all - save all processor registers on hardware stack.

A push me pull you

The last program showed that a subroutine call need not destroy the contents of the processor registers if their contents are important. With the exception of two programs in this book all the assembler procedures alter the contents of at least the accumulator and many of the index registers as well. Programs 14.5 and 14.6 provide suitable procedures to save and then restore all processor registers. The main point to note here is that the assembler is not implemented as a subroutine; in other words it does not end with an RTS. This means that the code must be placed at the point it is needed, with the register changing hex following straight after. It would be possible to implement it as a subroutine if required though I would not recommend it as it would need some jiggery pokery with the stack to put the RTS address after the pushed register values.

```
10 REMIRESTORE ALL PROCESSOR REGISTER
21
   20 REMIDDES NOT HAVE RTS MUST BE #
   30 REMAUSED DIRECTLY IN CODE. *
   40 :
 9220 DEF PROCpull_all(addr)
 9221 P%=addr
 9222 I DPT 2
9223 .pullall
 9224
                 PLA
 9225
                 TAY
 9226
                 PLA
 9227
                  TAX
 9228
                 PLA
                 PIP
 9229
 9230 1
 9231 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.6. PROCpull_all - restore all processor registers off of the hardware stack.

Count on it

And so to the last two of the 75 programs in this book, which I do hope you have found informative and useful. The two programs implement double-byte counters, useful for loop control with a count greater than 255 or for updating two-byte memory address.

Program 14.7 is an incrementing counter. The procedure first loads the start value of the counter, 'num' into the two bytes from

```
10 REM *** TWO BYTE COUNTER ***
  20 PRODinc_count (5000,%70,%800)
  25 CALL seed value
  30 REPEAT
  40 PRINT?&71#255+?&70
  50 CALL plus_one
  60 ENTIL ?%71=0
  70 END
  80 :
9240 DEF PROCinc_count (num, block, addr)
9241 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
9242 P%=addr
9243 [OFT pass
9244 .seed_value
9245
                   LDA #num MOD 256
9246
                   STA block
9247
                   LDA #num DIV 256
9248
                   STA block+1
9249 .plus_one
9250
                   INC block
9251
                   BNE no_inc
9252
                   INC block+1
9253 .no_inc
9254
                   RTS
9255 ]
9256 NEXT
9257 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.7. PROCinc_count - performs a double-byte increment

'block' (lines 9244 to 9248). The incrementing starts at 'plus_one' (line 9249) where 'block' has one added to it (line 9250). Any carry is detected by the zero flag and if set, one is added to 'block+1' else a return via 'no_inc' is performed.

```
10 REM *** DOUBLE BYTE DECREMENT ***
20 PROCdec_count (5000,%70,%C00)
25 CALL seed_value
30 REPEAT
40 PRINT?%71*256+?%70
50 CALL minus_one
60 UNTIL ?%71=0
70 END
80:
9260 DEF PROCdec_count (num,block,addr)
9261 FOR pass=0 TO 3 STEP 3
9262 P%=addr
9263 IOPT pass
9264 .seed_value
```

Program 14.8. PROCdec_count - performs a double-byte decrement.

```
9265
                    LDA .#num MOD 256
9266
                    STA block
9267
                    LDA #num DIV 256
9268
                    STA block+1
9269 .minus_one
9270
                    LDA block
9271
                    BNE no dec
9272
                    DEC block+1
9273 .no_dec
9274
                    DEC block
9275
                    RTS
9276 3
9277 NEXT
9278 ENDPROC
```

Program 14.8 PROCdec_count - performs a double-byte decrement (cont.)

The application program in lines 20 to 60 shows that once a count value has been seeded only 'plus_one' should be called to increment the block.

Decrementing a two-byte counter is a little less straightforward (Program 14.8). As before, the count start value is first seeded through 'num' (lines 9264 to 9268). The decrement process begins at 'minus_one' by first loading the low byte of the count at 'block' into the accumulator (line 9270). If this byte should be zero then the decrement must take the high page byte into consideration and decrement this (line 9272). Finally, the low byte is decremented (line 9274).

As with the previous program, after the initial set up it is 'no_dec' that must be called to perform the decrement as the BASIC demo illustrates.

Program fact sheets

Program 14.1

Procedure title : PROChighestIRQ

Variables required : temp, addr Line numbers : 9000 to >9050

Length : variable
Zero page requirements : nonc
Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 14.2

Procedure title : PROCtimerone_delay

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 9060 to 9084

Length : 34 bytes

Zero page requirements : none

Registers changed : A, X, Y

Program 14.3

Procedure title : PROCtimertwo_delay

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 9100 to 9124
Length : 34 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A. X. Y

Program 14.4

Procedure title : PROCdelay

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 9130 to 9179
Length : 48 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : none

Program 14.5

Procedure title : PROCpush_all

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 9200 to 9211
Length : 6 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : none

Program 14.6

Procedure title : PROCpull_all

Variables required : addr

Line numbers : 9220 to 9231
Length : 6 bytes
Zero page requirements : none
Registers changed : A, X, Y

194 BBC Micro Machine Code Portfolio

Program 14.7

Procedure title : PROCinc_count
Variables required : num, block, addr
Line numbers : 9240 to 9257
Length : 15 bytes
Zero page requirements : 2 bytes

Registers changed : A

Program 14.8

Procedure title : PROCdec_count
Variables required : num, block, addr
Line numbers : 9260 to 9278
Length : 17 bytes
Zero page requirements : 2 bytes

Registers changed : A

Appendix

Some Portfolio Programs in Bar Code Form

The next few pages contain several of the programs in the Portfolio in bar code form. Owners of the MEP bar code reader will be able to read these directly into the Beeb following the instructions in the Bar Code Reader Handbook.

Full details of the MEP bar code reader can be obtained from:

Micro Electronics Educational Program

Cheviot House

Coach Lane Campus

Newcastle-upon-Tyne NE7 7XA

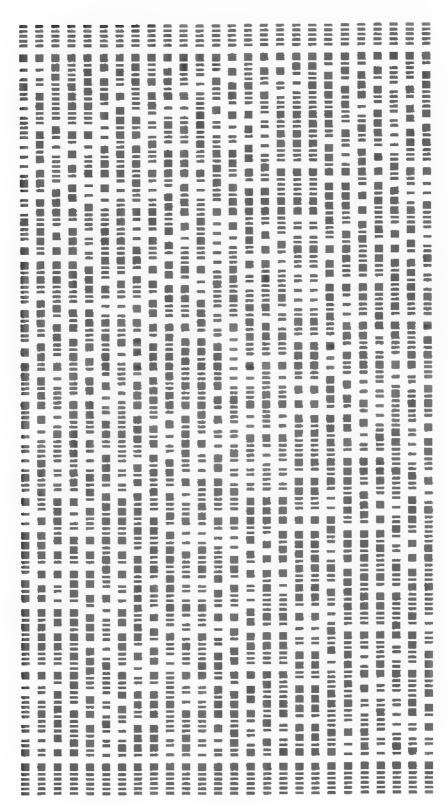
Because of space requirements, and to make the programs easier to read in, each of the programs have been extensively compacted by using shorter variable names and multistatement lines. To allow programs to be listed in a more readable form the first of the programs presented is BASFORM.

The programs presented are:

- (a) BASFORM (Program 4.1)
- (b) ASSFORM (Program 4.2)
- (c) PACK (Program 9.2)
- (d) KEYS2 (Program 2.2)
- (e) ERROR (Program 9.1)
- (f) VARS (Program 3.1)

≣≣

21 2 11 1 2 2 2 2 2 1 1 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 1 1 2 44E11 E1# E1#1611 E1# B1F1101 - - U G - 1 U G U G E1#115 E1 D12 - -BASFORM (Program 4.1)



≣ Ī 915 11 11911F WHILES! WWO

Ē Ī ≣ = === Ē ≣ ≣ Ī H = SIN 2 01 20 A 115 122 13 18 = -9111

ASSFORM (Program 4.2)

START

E = ≣ Ī Ī ≣ ≣ ≣ Ξ = Ξ #1811911 mai: white ship is a life of the company of the state of the # 11 CONTINUE TO THE RESIDENCE AND A STREET OF THE PROPERTY OF 9 - 112 RAGII BIO 912 - 112 - 01 000 000 CI CCC CCCIII CIT SITIISIII DEIICUI CCII CCCI 43 2162311 2 26311 1121 2112211 E _

Ξ FIR HERD HOSHIYE HINDHIDHER FEET HER INSHED HINDHID STEET STEET OF HINDHIDH STILL STHINKE IS 00 1 m m m HEILE

PACK (Program 9.2)

I Ξ Ħ ≣ === ≣ ≣ # HITT & I HITT I I WIT WENT BRING # :: :: # # H 8 11 1 8 8 GREET IN FRANCE OF STREET = W

KEYS2 (Program 2.2)

												3											
	=======================================	=	Ē		=	E	Ē	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	=	=	Ē	≣		Ī	=======================================	Ē	≣	=	Ξ	=
	=												=		=	Ē			=	=	=	Ē	=
		=		# 11 14 14 15 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16			Ē								≣		Ξ	#			=	=	=
		Ξ		Ē	=	Ξ		ä	Ī	Ē	Ē		=			Ē				Ē			=======================================
	=	Ē	Ξ				Ē			=		Ē		Ξ				Ē	ä				=
		Ξ					=	Ē	Ξ			Ξ		=	Ī					Н		Ē	
				Ē	=				Ē	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		Ī	Ξ	Ξ				Ē	Ē	Ħ	=
	Ē	Ē		≣	≣	Ē	Ē	_	Ē	=		=	_		=	Ē		Ξ	Ĭ	톸	Ĭ		
	E	Ē		Ī			=	Ξ		-			Н	₫		=			Ī		E	Ξ	=
	Ī	Ī	=				Ē		=	=	Ξ	Ī		Ξ	Ξ		=						Ī
	Ξ	Ē	ī	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		3	Ē	Ē		=	Ε	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		=		
	Ē	Ē		=		Ē	Ξ	Ē	Ē					Ξ						-	Ξ		ij
		Ē		=	Ē		Ξ	E			Ξ	Ē			Ē	Ξ		Ī	=		=		
	Ē			Ξ			Ξ						Ē			Ē		蒷	Ξ	Ī	Ξ	Ξ	
			Ē		Ē		Ē		=			100 page	Ξ		=	===	=	=	Ξ	Ī			
	Ē	Ξ	Ī			Ī			=	Ē					Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	=	Ē		=	Ξ
	=		Ξ		Ē	1	Ξ		=	Ξ	<u>=</u>	Ē	Ξ	Ē		Ξ	Ē	H	=	=	Ī		
		Ξ	Ē	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ		Ī	=	Ξ	Ē	Ξ	1			ä	=		=	E	=	
	-	Ĭ		=	Ξ	=	Ξ	E	=	ă	Ē		≣	=	=	-	=	1	=			=	=
	Ē	=		=	Ξ	=	=		=	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	=		=	=	=		=		
		=	Ξ			=					=	Ē			Ē		=	Ξ		=	Ē	Ξ	=
	Ē		Ē	=	Ξ	-				Ξ	=	Ξ	=	=	Ξ	=		Ē	Ξ	Ξ			
	=	Ē	Ξ	Ī			Ē	Ξ	Ī	-	=	Ē	Ξ							=	Ξ		=
	Ē	≣	Ē			Ē	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	\equiv			≣						蒷		=	=
	=		Ξ	Ē	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ							≣	Ξ	蒷	Ξ	Ē		Ē	Ē	
	Ξ	Ξ			Ī		Ξ	≣		=				Н		=		=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		=
	Ē	Ē	Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ξ	Ē	=	Ī	Ξ	Ē	Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ξ		Ē	Ē	=		•	=	
	Ξ			Ξ	Ē	Ξ		1	Ē	Ξ	Ē				Ē	Ē				=	=		
	5	Ē	E	=		Ē	Ξ				_		=	Ξ	Ē	Ē		=		E		=	
				Ī		Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ξ		Ē	=	蒷	Ξ		Ē	Ξ	=		蒷		Ī	
	Ē	Ē	Ξ	▋	Ĭ	Ē		Ξ		Ē	=	Ē	Ē	Ξ	Ē	3	Ξ	Ē	=	Ē	Ī		=
	Ē	Ē	Ē	≣	Ī	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ē	≣	Ξ	Ī	Ξ	=				=				Ī
		•				H	Ě	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		Ī	Ē	₫		Ī				=		
	_			=	Ē			Ξ	Ξ	蒷	=	Ξ	=			Ē			≡		=	=	=
				=	Ξ		Ē		=	=	Ē	E	Ξ		=	=	Ē		Ξ	=			_
					THE THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PART			=	214 CT 1 HERE III HIS	21 1 118 11188 IBNITEIR B	Ě	=			Ξ		DILEMENT REPORT OF THE SELECTION OF THE STATE OF THE STAT			=			=
_	=		≣			=			=	H	Ē		=	Н	=								
STARI		#		11111		3 3 1 11 ESSENTIFICATION OF THE STATE OF THE		***************************************				**************************************						T (111))	1911 - 1912 - 19		
S			=	=	=	=		Ξ			Ξ	Ē	Ξ	≣	=	=	=				=	=	Ī



ERROR (Program 9.1)

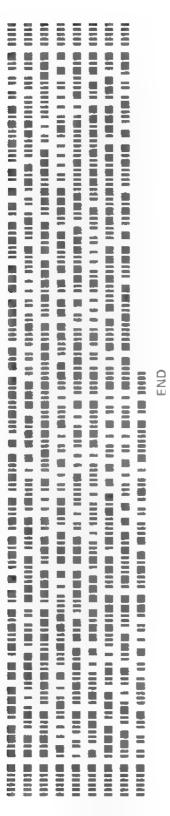
	_	_	_	_	_	_	_		_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
		≣	≣	Ē	=	Ē	≣	Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ē	Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ξ		Ξ	=				1111	
															<u>=</u>							=	
1			THE RESIDENCE OF THE PROPERTY								3 4 111 242114			8	Ī	≣			≣			#	
			Ē		蒷	Ē		Ξ	₫		Ξ		Ξ		Ī		Ē				=		Ī
	Ξ	Ξ	_	Ē	ī	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ē					Ξ	≣			_	Ī				Ē
	Ē	Ē		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	트	Ξ							=	₫			Ī				=
	Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ		≣	Ē			Н		Ξ	Ξ		Ξ		≣			Ē	
	Ī		≣			Ξ				=					Ē			≣					=
	Ī	Ξ				Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ē					Ξ	Ē		Ξ	Ξ			Ē	
	≣		=	Ē		Ξ	Ξ	Ē	Ē	Ξ	=		Ē	Ē			Ē	Ξ		₫	Ē		
	in			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		=							Ē	Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ
	Ξ	Ī		Ē		Ξ		Ē	Ξ	=		=		Ξ	Ξ	蒷			Ξ	Ī	Ē	Ē	=
	Ξ	911		=	Ē	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	-	Ē	-	=			Ξ		Ξ	Ē	Ē	≣	Ξ	
		Ξ							=				Ë	Ξ		Ē		Ξ	=			Ē	=
	Ξ	Ī	E	Ξ	=	Ē			Ē		蒷		=	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	9	₫	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	
	6		1	Ξ	Ē					Ē	Ξ	Ξ			1			H		=			=
	=	=	Ē	Ξ	Ē	E	Ξ	Ē	E	Ē	Ξ			Ξ	Ē		≣		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		
	Ē	Ē		ē	Ē		Ξ	Ξ	ĕ		Ī			Ē		Ξ				=	Ē	=	=
	=		ā	ī			=		Ē		ē	Ξ	=	_		Н	_		Ē		Ξ		
		ij		Ξ						ī	=	-			-	Ē		Ē	=			Ē	Ē
	=	=	=		=		_	Ξ	Ξ	=======================================	9	=		ij	=	=	Ξ	Ē		Ē	ē	Ξ	=
			Ē	E		Ξ		Ξ	E						_	Ē		i	=		=	Ē	
	Ξ		=		Ξ		=	=	Ξ			_	=		=		Ξ		Ē				
			Ē	Ξ	=		Ξ	ī	Ε	Ē	=		ï	Ī			Ξ	Ē	_	Ξ			
			E	E	=			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	E		=		Ξ		=	=	-		Ξ	=	
	=			9	=		Ξ	i	Ē		=	_	=	E		_	Ē	5			Ē	-	
	Ē				=	Ξ		Ξ		Ξ	=			Ē			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	=		_	Ξ
	≣	Ē		Ē	-	≣		E	=			Ē	Ē	Ē	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	ā		=	=	Ē
	Ξ	Ē	=		Ξ	=		Ξ		Ξ	=			1			Ξ			=			=
	ï		Ξ			Ē		E	Ē		=	Ε	Ε	=	Ē			Ξ			=	=	=
					Ē			Ē		=					=	=	=		E	=			
	Ĩ			=	=		_		=	=	=		=	=					-	-	=	=	=
	Ī	Ξ	=		Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ε			Ē				=					
	Ī		Ξ	=	H	=		=				=				_	=				=	=	=
	Ξ		=	Ξ	=		=	=	Ē			=		-		Ē	Ī	Ē	Ĩ				
			=	E		Ī											-	-	=	Ĩ	1		
	Ē			=			=======================================					E		-				=	=		=	-	
	=						1161611166111			## 1 H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H					#		11 201 12111 2 21511					111 1110 0101 STE	
H																							
START	≣													11111									Ī
٠,	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	-	_		_	-					_	_	_			_

≣ E Ē

VARS (Program 3.1)

START

Ē		E	Ī		Ē	E	Ē	≣	Ē	Ī	=	Ξ		Ē	H	Ī	Ī	=	Ī	Ē		Ξ
=	=	=											=			=						Ξ
														# ### # ##############################								
		# 1	Ξ	=		-		Ξ				=	# 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11		=				=			=
_	Ξ	=	Ξ		Ξ	-	Ξ		Ξ	-			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	ē	Ξ					=
=		Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	=	E	Ξ	=	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ	ā	Ξ	H	
Ü	Ξ		_	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ				Ξ	Ξ	1	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	
-		=		Ē				Ē		Ξ			Ξ		Ξ	Ξ			Ξ			
_	=		Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ				_	Ξ	Ë		Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	Ē	Ξ	
=	Ξ	_	Ξ	Ξ		В	Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ				=	Ξ	Ξ
- 2	▕	Ξ			Ξ		Ξ				Ξ				Ξ	Ξ				=		
=		Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ε	E			_		≣		_	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	=	-	
_		Ξ	=		Ξ	E			Ξ		≣			Ξ			Ξ	Ξ	=		Ξ	=
			_	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	=	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		=
-	Ξ	Ξ							≣		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ				Ξ			Ξ		
≣					Ξ		-		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ			=		_	=		
=	=		Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	=		ā	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	=	=	=		=	
-		Ξ			Ξ				Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	400					_	Ξ		Ξ		
=			_			Ξ		-	Ξ		=							Ξ	-			
- 5	Ξ		Ξ	_	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	-		Ξ		-	Ξ	-	=		=	Ξ		
- 80	Ξ		Ξ		=	=	-	-	ē	ä	=	-		-	Ξ		=			ā	-	=
	Ξ	Ξ	=	=	=	Ξ	=	=	Ξ	Ξ		=	Ξ	=							Ξ	
=			=	=	=	3	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	-		=	Ξ	Ξ	ű.	-			Ξ	=	=
=	Ξ	_	Ξ			=	Ξ	_			ā	=	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		ä		Ξ		=
_	Ξ	=	6	Ξ		=	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ē	ä	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	н	Ξ	=	Ë	Ξ		=
=	=	-	Ξ	=		=	Ξ			Ξ	=		=	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		ë	Ë	н	
	Ē		н	=	=		=		8	=		Ĭ		Ξ	Ξ	-	=				=	
Ξ		Ξ		=	Ξ	₫	Ξ			Ξ	_				=			Ξ		Ξ		=
-	=		Ξ			Ö	=	H		н	-		Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ	Ē		Ξ	Н		
	≣				=			Ξ			Ξ					≣	Ξ				Ē	-
三			Ξ	_		Ξ		Ξ	Ξ		=	Ξ	≣		Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ		Ξ	
=	_		Ξ		Ξ		Ξ	=			_	Ξ		8	\equiv	Ξ.	Ξ	Ξ		Ē	Ξ	=
		Ξ		Ξ			#			Ξ	Ξ	Ε		Ξ		Ξ	Ξ				н	
=			_	Ξ		Ε	-	Ξ	=	=		Ξ	Ξ		=			Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ
	Ξ		Ē				Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	_	Ξ		Ξ	Ξ	-	_		=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ
Ξ		=	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	=	Ξ	=		Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	Ε	=	Ξ
	Ξ	_	Ξ		_		=	=	Ξ	Ξ		_	=		Ħ			=	_		Ξ	Ξ
Ξ	Ξ		\equiv			\equiv				Ξ						_	_					
=		Ξ			Ξ	=	Ξ	_				Ξ	Ξ			Ξ	Ξ	Ξ	Ξ		Ξ	\equiv
	=	Ŧ						=		=		3		Ξ	Ξ.	Ξ	=	6		Ξ		
						Ξ			Ξ		Ξ					=					=	
				THE RESIDENCE OF THE PERSON OF							DIT OF BUILDING BID THE					# 1100 1011111 10 0 0 1		=				
	-		Ξ		Ħ				-	=	Ē							=				CO 12 311155 1183
		Ξ			Ξ		Ξ	-	=	=	=	=	Ξ	=	Ξ	Ξ.	Ξ.		Ξ		=	Ξ
三				_		Ξ				Ξ	Ξ	Ŧ.				Ξ	Ξ				6	
	ū						=		=								Ξ	-		=		
-	-			=	_		Ξ			_		=				=	=	=	-	Ξ	Ξ	=
_	=		â				=				Ξ	Ξ		Ξ		=	=	-		=		
	=					=				=								=				
	_		_	=	=		=				_		=	2	=							
=	=		511 1 18 BHEHE SHI H	-							Ξ		Ξ		=	=	=		=			
						=				=								MI 14 18111 44 1 1 64 6611 211111				
											Ī	Ī	Ī							9111		
=	Ē	Ξ	=	=	=	E	Ē	=	≣	=	Ē	=	Ē	=	=	=			Ë	=	E	Ξ
																				_	_	-



Index

Acorn User, 10
ADC channels, 72
addition, 88
ASCII, 2
ASCII to BCD conversion, 179
ASCII to decimal conversion, 25
ASL, 88, 101
assembler formatter, 32, 36
autorun, 85

bar code programs, 195
BASIC 1, 7
BASIC 11, 1, 7
BASIC formatter, 32, 33
BCD to ASCII conversion, 178
binary search, 131
binary to Hex ASCII conversion, 177
BRKV, 80
bubble sort, 152

CLG, 119 clock, 72 CLS, 166 CNTR L, 18 COLOUR, 117 compact, 81 CRTC, 36, 111, 112

delay one second. 187 decrementing counter, 192 division, 88, 94 DRAW, 115

escape, 80 ELSE, 36 Epson, 41 errors, 78 error lister, 78 EQU, 7 EQUB, 7 EQUD, 7 EQUS, 7 EQUW, 7 events, 72 events, list of, 73 EVNTV, 72, 76

fastsort, 155 FN, 7 function key buffer, 11 function key listing, 19 function keys, 10

GET. 170 GCOL, 117, 118 global search and replace, 61 graphics cursor position, 121 GREPL, 61

hex to ASCII decimal conversion, 59 HIMEM, 24

IER, 185
IF, 36
IFR, 185
incrementing counter, 190
INKEY, 171, 172
integer sort, 150
interrupt polling, 183
interval timer, 72
IRQ, 183

library, 1, 2 LISTO, 32, 33, 36 load screen memory, 45 LOMEM, 24 LSR, 88, 102

maximum-minimum values, 142 memory remaining, 24

millisecond delay T1, 185 millisecond delay T2, 186 MODE, 3, 108 MODE2A, 109 MODE2A screen map, 112 MODE5A, 113 MOS, 3, 13, 36, 54 MOVE, 3, 114 multiplication, 88

new list, 153 next free location, 24

one dimensional byte array, 146 ordered addition, 134 ordered delete, 139 OPT, 4, 7, 9 OSBYTE, 112, 170, 171, 172, 183 OSFILE, 41, 44 OSFILE call codes, 42 OSFILE parameter block, 41, 121 OSWORD, 51, 73, 121, 122, 174, 176 OSWORD parameter block, 51, 123, 175 OSWRCH, 50, 51, 109, 114, 118, 124

P%. 4 pack, 81 PAGE, 24 physical colours, 117 PLOT, 3, 116 POINT, 122 pointer bytes, 10 POS, 166 printer screen dumper, 46 PROC. 2 PROC_screen_dump, 47 PROCasc_bcd, 179 PROCbasic_format, 33 PROCbackgrnd, 118 PROCbed_ascii, 178 PROCbin_search, 132 PROCbyte_array, 146 PROCchange_palette, 120 PROCelg, 119 PROCels, 166 PROCcolour, 117 PROCcursor, 166 PROCdec_count, 191 PROCdelay, 187 PROCdraw, 115 PROCerror, 79 PROCgcol, 119 PROCgcursor, 121

PROCgetkey, 170 PROCgrepl, 63 PROChex_asc, 177 PROChighestIRQ, 184 PROCinc_count, 191 PROCinfo, 20 PROCinkey, 171 PROCinputline, 175 PROCkeys1, 13 PROCkeys2, 16 PROCkeytest, 173 PROCloadscreen, 45 PROCmax_min, 142 PROCmode, 108 PROCmode2A, 109 PROCmode5A, 113 PROCmove, 114 PROCmulti_add, 89 PROCmulti_div, 94 PROCmulti_mult. 91 PROCmulti_sub, 90 PROCnew_list, 154 PROConebyte_square, 98 PROCordered_add, 135 PROCordered_del, 139 PROCpack, 82 PROCpixel, 122 PROCplot, 116 PROCpull_all, 190 PROCpush_all, 189 PROCquick, 156 PROCreadchr, 176 PROCreadpalette, 123 PROCsavescreen, 42 PROCsort32, 151 PROCspace, 167 PROCstring, 168 PROCtabx, 169 PROCtabxy, 169 PROCtime, 74 PROCtimerone_delay, 185 PROCtimertwo_delay, 186 PROCtwo_asl, 101 PROCtwobyte_square, 100 PROCtwo_byte_lsr, 102 PROCtwo_byte_ror, 103 PROCtwo_byte_rol, 104 PROCtwodim_byte, 147 PROCunordered_del, 144 PROCvars, 26 PROCyduchrs, 56 PROCword_array, 149 PROCwritepalette, 124 PROCxyaddr, 125

212 , Index

program fact sheets, 19, 31, 40, 52, 60, 71, 77, 87, 105, 106, 107, 127, 128, 129, 130, 162, 163, 164, 180, 181, 182, 192, 193, 194
program formatters, 32

program information, 20 program information service, 25 program size, 24

quicksort, 155

REM, 81, 84 ROL, 88 ROR, 88, 103

save screen memory, 41 screen dump, 52 simple graphics compiler, 2 soft character buffer, 54 spaces, 81, 84 SPC, 167 square roots, 88, 98 Star, 41 status, 20, 24 STRINGS, 167 subtraction, 88, 90 TAB(X), 168 TAB(X,Y), 168 TOP, 24 top pointer, 13

unordered delete, 144 user defined characters, 53 user VIA, 183

variable storage, 27, 28 variables, 20 VARTOP, 24 video control register, 113, 114 VDU, 51, 54, 108, 112 VDU19, 120 VDU23, 53, 111 VDU25, 114 VPOS, 166

word array, 149 WRDCH, 33, 36, 39

*EXEC, 1, 3, 5 *SPOOL, 2, 3 *640 table, 125 This outstanding collection of machine code routines and utilities sets out – ready to use – what every user needs to get the best from the BBC Micro.

Each program is supplied in the form of a procedure or function with unique line numbers. This means that the user can build up his own library of files that can be executed into a main program to be called by name from the driving program – structured programming at its best!

Each program comes fully tested and includes a demonstration call to show how it works and the type of application possible.

The Author

Bruce Smith is Technical Editor of Acorn User. His interest in computers was born four years ago when he purchased an Acorn Atom. Since then he has written numerous books, many on the subject of machine code programming. He is a regular contributor to many magazines including Acorn User, A & B Computing and Digital and Micro Electronics.

More books for BBC Micro users

THE BBC MICRO An Expert Guide

Mike James 0246 12014 2

ADVANCED MACHINE CODE TECHNIQUES FOR THE BBC MICRO

A. P. Stephenson and D. J. Stephenson 0246 12227 7

ADVANCED PROGRAMMING FOR THE BBC MICRO

Mike James and S. M. Gee

DISK SYSTEMS FOR THE BBC MICRO

lan Sinclair

DISCOVERING BBC MICRO MACHINE CODE

A. P. Stephenson

Front cover illustration by Jeff Ridge